

**Omphile Umphi Modise:
Diteng le Dimelo tsa
baanelwabagolo**

G. F. Moepi

2011

Omphile Umphi Modise : Diteng le Dimelo tsa baanelwabagolo

ka

GAAMELE FRANCINA MOEPI

E neetswe go kgotsofatsa ditlhokego tsa dikerii

ya

MAGISTER ARTIUM

Ka mo Lefapheng la Dipuo tsa Bantsho mo

YUNIBESITHI YA PRETORIA

LEFAPHENG LA THUTASETHO

PRETORIA

MOFATLHOSI: POROFESARA M.J. MOJALEFA

MOTLATSAMOFATLHOSI: MME R.M. RAMAGOSHI

MOTSHEGANONG 2011

DITEBOGO

Go Moporofesara M.J. Mojalefa. O ntirile seo ke leng sona gompieno. O nnile rre wa senatla ka go ntsha bofofu matlhong a me gore ke bone tsela. A Ramasedi wa poloko a go atisetse matsatsi a botshelo! O kgone go abela bana ba bangwe lesedi leo o nkabetseng lona. Ke a leboga Tau ya mariri.

Mme R.M. Ramagoshi, ke a leboga. O nkamogetse ka diatla tse di bothito, wa nthotloetsa mo tseleng e, go fitlha ke fetsa loeto. O se ke wa latlha mma. Mmangwana o tshwara thipa ka fa bogaleng. Masego.

Rre D.M.G. Sekeleko ka re malebo, fa o intshoketse go siamisa puo, go ntsha dilabe tse di sa batlegeng mo patlisisong e. Le fa loeto lo ne lo le boima ga wa ka wa fela pelo. Ke lebogela boitshoko, bopelotelele, le thuso ya gago rra. Ka re Modimo wa Kgotso a nne le wena ka bosakhutleng gore o kgone go thusa ba bangwe ba ba tshwanang le nna kamoso.

Mme S.Schoeman, Ke a leboga fa o fetoletse patlisiso e, mo lolemeng lwa SeEisemane le SeAfrikaanse. O dirile tiro e e masisi tota. Le ka moso mma!

Ke lebogela metlobo ya dibuka ya ba Yunibesithi ya Pretoria ka thuso e ba nneileng yona fa ke ne ke dira patlisiso e. Ka re seatla godimo ga se sengwe.

Nka dira phoso fa nka lebala baithuti bangwe bao ke tsamaileng loeto lo, le bone e leng: Joyce Motlhamme, Martha Machika, Caroline Aphane, Lorraine Mmanageng Maubane le Adolphina Mabuela. Ke lebogela tshegetso ya lona bomma. Go ngaka Mary Mosetlha nka se tsoge ke go lebetse mo botshelong jwa me. O kile wa nna seitshegetso sa me. Morena a nne nao. Ausi Maki Motlhaka le mmane Mida Seswike bao ba ithobaletseng boroko jo bogolo ke a leboga. A meboya ya lona e robale ka kagiso.

Go Bakone ba bina photi, ba ga Manyaka, ka re ke a leboga go mpelegela mme wa senatla Moremadi Naniki Maria Matlala. Ke abela patlisiso e, go ena. Le fa a ile bo ya batho ke ntse ke lwa le tiro e. Ka re mme moya wa gago o robale gonne bofejane jwa gago Pheladi bo bone seo bo neng bo se batla.

Rre mofu Kgoroši wa megobo e thata, Lentsho la Rasepena maitlho mantshomane, Samuel Matlala ke a leboga fa o ne o bapalela tsetse. O re godisitse re arogana tlhogwana ya tsie mmogo. O mpontshitse lesedi la thuto rra. Mokone wa ntšhi dikgolo, mokone ntšhi ga a di beole, Morena a boloke moya wa gago ka nako tsotlhe.

Nkgonne wa me Mphaphi a'Kgotlholo John Mphasi Matlala ke go lebogela tlhotlheetso e o mphileng yona mo botshelong jwa gago. Le fa o sa bona maungo a ditiro tsa gago, ka loeto lwa gago lo nnile lo le khutshwane. Itse gore mokgori wa moriti ga se monni wa ona. Ke a leboga Mokone. A moya wa gago o robale ka kagiso.

Go nkgonne wa me, yo ke mo ratang, yo ke setseng le ena fela Medupe Michael Keleabetswe Matlala. Ke a leboga. Malome maja ditlhogo Potso Thompson Manyaka. Ke a leboga.

Banake bao ba nneileng tshegetso mo loetong lo lo telele le, ga ke itse gore ke le leboge jang. Ke ne ke le sia le le masea a a metsi. Le sa itse lerato la me. Ke tsoga ka matsha ke boa bosigo. Le fetogile dikhutsana ke santse ke tshela. Ke re go lona: Mosopyadi a Lekholane Mašienyane Tabea Mmathapelo, Boledi Rachel Mathudi, Tshepiso Christian, Tlhapogadi Malebo Hellen, Kgoroši Lentsho Samuel, Pheladi Matsheko Elizabeth, Moremadi Naniki Maria, Mmakgolofelo Reabetswe, Lesego Queen, Dimo Kearabilwe Andries le Dineo Daphney le setlogolo sa me Mosopyadi a Lekholane Mašienyane Tshireletso, seatla godimo ga se sengwe, ke a leboga Bakgatla. Nka dira phoso fa nka lebala mokgonyana wa me Rammalane Harry Monye. Ka re ke a leboga Kwena.

Go rragobanake, monna wa me Johannes Morake Moepi, mmina Kgabo, Mokgatla, ke a leboga. O ne o fetogile rre le mme mo tseleng e e thata e. O tlhoka tshegetso ya me fa ke ne ke mekamekana le tiro e. O sa mphelele pelo. O ntlhotlheletsa letsatsi le letsatsi. O ntse o re kodumela moepathutsi ga go khumo e e tswang gaufi. Modimo a go okeletse matsatsi a botshelo gore o tle o bone tse dikgolo.

Modimo Mothata yotlhe, Modira legodimo le lefatshe. O ntshireleditse mo dikotsing tsothle. O mphile botshelo le nonofo go fitlha ke konosetsa patlisiso e. Ke a go leboga Rara. Ke kopa gore o nne le nna ka bosakhutleng. Amen.

DITENG

KGAOLO YA NTLHA	1
1.1. MATSENO.....	1
1.2. MAIKAELELO	4
1.2.1. Dipatlisiso tse di setseng di dirilwe ka padi e	4
1.3. TLHALOSO YA DIKGPOLO	14
1.3.1. Matlhotlhapelo	14
1.3.2. Phatose/ Masisapelo ‘Pathos’	15
1.3.3. Pharologano magareng a matlhotlhapelo le masisapelo ‘phatose’ ...	17
1.3.4. Padithuto.....	18
1.3.5. Padiboitsholo	20
1.3.6. Bokgarakgatshegi/Pikaresiki	22
1.3.7. Dipharologano magareng ga matlhotlhapelo, padithuto, padiboitsholo le bokgarakgatshegikwalwa/pikaresiki.....	25
1.4. MOKGWA WA PATLISISO	28
1.4.1. Go tlhalosa	28
1.4.2. Go ranola	29
1.5. MMOTLOLO WA BOANEDI ‘NARRATOLOGICAL MODEL’	31
1.5.1. Letlalo la diteng.....	32
1.5.2. Letlalo la thulaganyo	34
1.5.3. Letlalo la setaele	37
1.6. TSAMAISO YA DIKGANG.....	39
KGAOLO YA BOBEDI.....	42
2.1. DITENG.....	42
2.1.1. Matseno.....	42
2.1.2. Tshosobanyo ya ditiragalo tsa diteng	42
2.1.3. Setlhogo.....	45
2.2. TLHALOSO YA DIELEMENTE TSA DITENG.....	47
2.2.1. Baanelwa.....	47
2.2.2. Ditiragalo	49
2.2.3. Nako	50
2.2.4. Lefelo.....	51
2.3. TIRISO YA DIELEMENTE TSA DITENG	52
2.3.1. Baanelwa ba diteng.....	52
2.3.2. Moganediwa motho yo o pelontle ‘Kind-hearted person’.....	53
2.3.3. Moganetsi motho wa dikgotlhang, yo o lotlhanyang ‘quarrel-some person’	54
2.3.4. Kamano ya baanelwabagolo le baanelwabannye.....	55
2.4. TSHOSOBANYO.....	70
2.4.1. Kamano e, ya baanelwa e akarediwa ka setshwantsho se:	70
2.5. DITIRAGALO TSA DITENG	72
2.5.1. Mefuta ya ditiragalo	72
2.5.2. Ditiragalotshwanelo	73
2.5.3. Ditiragalo ka botsona.....	73
2.5.4. Tshosobanyo	78



2.6.	TIKOLOGO	79
2.6.1.	Nako	79
2.6.2.	Nako e e akanngwang	87
2.7.	LEFELO	89
2.7.1.	Mafelo a a akanngwang/a a rileng	89
2.7.2.	Mafelo a a sa akanngweng a ditiragalo	91
2.8.	TSHOSOBANYO	93
KGAOLO YA BORARO		94
3.1.	THULAGANYO	94
3.1.1.	Matseno	94
3.1.2.	Thitokgang	94
3.1.3.	Thitokgang ya <i>Omphile Umphi Modise</i>	95
3.1.4.	Kakanyetso 'design'	97
3.1.5.	Dikgato tsa thulaganyo	102
3.1.6.	Kgotlhang	103
3.1.7.	Kgogedi	105
3.1.8.	Tshosobanyo	106
3.1.9.	Tlhaloso ya tshenolo mo go <i>Omphile Umphi Modise</i>	107
3.2.	DIELEMENTE TSA THULAGANYO	108
3.2.1.	Banelwa	109
3.3.	TSHOSOBANYO	114
KGAOLO YA BONE		117
4.1.	MATSENO	117
4.2.	SEMELO SA MOANELWA	117
4.2.1.	Thekeniki	120
4.3.	TSHOSOBANYO	175
4.4.	TSHOSOBANYO	182
4.5.	TSHOSOBANYO	193
KGAOLO YA BOTLHANO		196
5.1.	SEMELO SA MOLWANTSHI	196
5.1.1.	Matseno	196
5.1.2.	Molwantshi jaaka motho yo o nang le maemo	196
5.2.	TSHOSOBANYO	213
KGAOLO YA BORATARO		215
6.1.	BOKHUTLO	215
6.1.1.	Matseno	215
6.1.2.	Kgaolo ya ntlha	215
6.1.3.	Kgaolo ya bobedi	216
6.1.4.	Kgaolo ya boraro	218
6.1.5.	Kgaolo ya bone	219
6.1.6.	Kgaolo ya botlhano	221
7.	BIBELEOKERAFAI/METLOBO	223
7.1.	SETLHANGWA SE SE SEKASEKILWENG	223
7.2.	METSWEDI YA TIORI	223
8.	SUMMARY	234
Keywords:		contents
.....		235
OPSOMMING		237



Sleutelwoorde :..... inhoud
..... 239

KGAOLO YA NTLHA

1.1. MATSENO

Dipadi tsa Setswana tse di buang ka matlhotlhapelo, di tlhagisa morero wa majako le wa makgoweng. Mo dikwalong tse, bakwadi ba lemosa mmuisi mathata a bathobantsho ba rakanang nao fa ba le kwa metseteropong. Mathata a, a tlišwa ke pharologano ya maitsholo magareng ga metseselegae le metseteropo.

Monyaise o kwadile dikwalwa di le mmalwa tse di buang ka ga morero wa makgoweng. Ka jalo, o botlhokwa thata mo dikwalweng tsa Setswana. O kwadile dikwalwa tse di latelang, e leng, *Omphile Umphi Modise* (1960) (Morero wa makgoweng), *Marara* (1961) (Morero wa makgoweng), *Ngaka Mosadi Mooka* (1965) (Morero wa go bontsha botlhokwa jwa mosadi mo lelapeng), *Bogosi Kupe* (1967) (Morero wa lenyalo le bogosi), *Go ša baori* (1970) (Morero wa makgoweng) le *Dilo di masoke (phetolelo ya Things Fall Apart ka Chinua Achebe)*(1991) (Morero wa tokologo).

Dingwe tsa dikwalwa tse Monyaise a di kwadileng ga di a ka tsa gatsiwa. Go tswelala pele, Monyaise o ne a nna mongwe wa bakwadi ba ba botlhokwa go tlhophiwa ke ba Boto ya Puo ya Setswana. Ke teng mo Monyaise a neng a newa tlotlo ka go amogela sekgele se se reeletsweng ka Sol T. Plaatjie.

Go tswelera pele Monyaise o tlhotlheletse bakwadi ba bantsi ba dikwalwa tsa Setswana jaaka Mekgwe fa a tla kwala *Masaikategang a Magodimo*. O godisitse puo ya Setswana, a e nontsha ka puo ya gagwe e e bofitlha. Fa a bua ka ga botlhokwa jwa ga Monyaise, mo go nngwe ya dikwalwa tsa gagwe, Malimabe (1998:25) a re:

Omphile Umphi Modise e na le boleng jo bo babatsang ka ntlha ya tiriso ya puo ya maemogodimo ya kgogedi le kobiso mo thadisong ya ditiragalo.

Seno se bontsha bokgoni mo dikwalweng tsa gagwe. Mogapi (1982:11) o bontsha seno ka go re:

Monyaise o na le bokwalo jo bo atlegileng. Katlego ya tsone e raya gore di monate, di a kगतlha, di a tsitsibosa, di gogomosa maikutlo, e bile di dira mmuisi 'pelotshetlha'.

Seno se gatelela gore Monyaise o nnile le tlhotlheletso e ntsi mo bakwading ba bangwe ba Setswana. Ke ka ntlha e Shole (1997:3) a reng:

The new tendency is largely attributed to the influence of D.P.S. Monyaise, "largely," because, firstly, other influences cannot be ruled out, such as an exposition to more possibilities of narration through contact with other writing traditions, and

secondly, because some elements of the narrative of the Neofiction are indigenous to ordinary Setswana discourse.

Manyaka (1992:6) o tlaleletsa ka go re:

The influence that Monyaise has on other writers in Setswana is wide and very important.

Ga go makatse fa Mmileng a kwadile fela jaaka Monyaise. Ka ntlha ya phokelelo ya ga Monyaise, Manyaka (1992:17) o netefatsa se ka go re:

For instance in Setswana, D.P.S Monyaise as a precursor writer had influence a lot of writers like Mmileng.

Basekaseki ba bangwe ba ba kwadileng ka D.P.S Monyaise ke Malope R.M. O kwadile ka ga *Tshekatshekotsenelelo ya dipadi tsa ntlha tse tlhano tsa ga Monyaise*. Malope o tshalosa Monyaise e le motho yo o ratang bokwadi thata.

Pretorius ena, o bona Monyaise jaaka raditoro, gonne di mo tlhotlheletse mo bokwading jwa gagwe. Pretorius (1990:22) o gateletse thata ka se e neng e le ponelopele ya bokwadi jwa gagwe fa a re:

Toe die hoofkarakter van die werk in Natal in die skool was, het sy vriende gesê sy gedagtes is net 'n klomp drome. Met verloop van tyd het hulle hom dan Umphophi genoem, en dit beteken dromer. Dit is verkort na Umphi.

Monyaise ke mokwadi wa maemo a a kwa godimo. O na le bokgoni. Seno se tlile go lemogega fa *Omphile Umphi Modise* e sekasekwa ka go lebisitswe mo go diteng le dimelo tsa baanelwabagolo.

1.2. MAIKAELELO

Patlisiso e lemosegile gore basekaseki ba ba setseng ba batlisisitse *Omphile Umphi Modise* ga ba ka ba sekaseka karolo ya popego ya sekwalwa ya diteng le poloto ka tsenelelo.

Ka jalo, maikaelelo a patlisiso e, ke go sekaseka diteng le semelo sa baanelwa ba bagolo ba kanedi e go totilwe molwantshiwa le molwantshi mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise* go senola bothokwa jwa Monyaise mo dikwalweng tsa Setswana. Fela pele ga tlhaloso e, go tlile go tlhokomelwa basekaseki ba ba setseng ba batlisisitse dikwalwa tsa ga Monyaise.

1.2.1. Dipatlisiso tse di setseng di dirilwe ka padi e

Dipatlisiso tsa padi e, di dirilwe ke basekaseki ba: Malope, R.M, Mogapi, K, Pretorius, R.S, Manyaka, N.J, Shole, J.S. le Malimabe, R.M.

1.2.1.1. Malope, R.M.: *Tshekatsheko tsenelelo ya dipadi tsa ntlha tse tlhano tsa ga D.P.S Monyaise (1977)*

Go lemosega fa Malope a sa sekaseka diteng tsa padi ya *Omphile Umphi Modise*, mme bogolo a dirile tshosobanyo fela. Tshosobanyo e ga se tshekatsheko e e lebaganeng le diteng go ya ka lereo la tshekatsheko.

Tshekatsheko ya gagwe ya poloto, e arogantswe ka polotokgolo le polotwana. Ditiragalo tse di lebaganeng le polotokgolo ke botshelo jwa Motlalepule kwa Gauteng, go simolola fa a goroga, go fitlha a boela gae.

Polotwana e e mabapi le botshelo jwa ga Modise kwa magaeng. Mosekaseki o tlhalosa fa mopadi a kgaola moelelo wa nako ka go se simolole kanelo ka ditiragalo kwa ntlheng, mme a di gapa go ya bokhutlong. Malope o tlhalosa fa mokwadi a tlisa kgogedi ka go tlogela mafoko gore mmuisi a ikakanyetse ka boena.

Malope o lemosa babuisi fa dikwalwa tsa ga Monyaise di se bonolo go tlhaloganyega, ka ntlha ya setaele le tlotlofoko e e nonneng. Ka tsela e, Monyaise o botlhokwa thata mo dikwalweng tsa Setswana.

1.2.1.2. Mogapi, K: *Tshekatsheko ya dikwalo: Padi (1982)*

Go tshwana le Malope, Mogapi ga a sekaseka diteng go ya ka tiori ya lereo le. Tshekatsheko ya gagwe e itshetlegile mo godimo ga setaele.

Mogapi o tsaya Monyaise e le mokwadi yo o atlegileng. O bontsha katlego ya gagwe ka go tlhagisa diphetogo tsa matshelo a bašwa, ka go tlogela botshelo jwa Setswanatswana gongwe ke ya botshelo jwa seteropong. Seno se tlhagelela sentle mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise*. Motlalepule o tlogela motse wa Setswana o ya Gauteng. Ka ntlha ya leuba le le falatsang batho go ya majako.

Mosekaseki o tlhalosa fa Monyaise a dirisitse puo e e bofitlha, e bile e tsitsibolola tlhaloganyo. Puo e e dirang mmuisi pelotshweu. Mogapi o tlhalosa fa Monyaise a dirisitse baanelwa ba nnete, e leng, ba madi le nama. Baanelwa ba, ba bontsha botshelo, ka gonne ba na le maikutlo. O tlhalosa fa moanelwamogolo e le ena pinagare ya ditiragalo tse dintsi tse di amanang nae. Mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise* moanelwamogolo ke Motlalepule. O tlhalosa fa go na le baanelwa ba bangwe ba ba diriswang go senola moanelwamogolo. Bona ba dira gore moanelwamogolo a tlhagise botho le maikutlo a gagwe.

Motlalepule o tlogile kwa gae, a ya go batla tiro kwa Gauteng. Basetsana ba Gauteng, boThandi, ba mmontsha masanakokometse ka go mo nosa mogodungwana o o bodila, mme ba letlelela monna go mo roba leoto. Tlhaloso ya tsalo ya ngwana le go isiwa kgodisong e supa fa semelo sa Mosidi se fetolwa ke tikologo. Ka setso sa Setswana, a ka bo a sa isa ngwana kwa kgodisong ka a ne a tshwanetse go mo isa kwa

gae kwa Matile. O nyalwa ke RraMosidi, mme dikgomo tsa felela go boreaitse a ntse a dutse sephiri ka marago. Gotlhe ya nna maaka a loleme, gonne MmaMosidi ga a ka a fola.

Mosekaseki o aroganya poloto ka tsela e: thulaganyo le phetogo ya ditiragalo, phetogo ya botho jwa moanelwamogolo le phetogo ya dikakanyo tsa gagwe.

Mosekaseki o tthalosa fa mokwadi a dirisitse puo e e nonneng, e e humileng, e e moro o o lerepa, puo e e tsitsibosang maikutlo, e tshikinya mmuisi. Sekao ke go bakwa ga bontle jwa ga Motlalepule:

Motlalepule e ne e le mosetsana yo mosetlhana,
wa marata-go-lejwa, motho wa go katoga monyo,
sekgatlhabadimo (1976:139).

Mogapi o tthalosa fa mokwadi a dirisitse mokgwa o o bofitlha. O tthalosa fa mmuisi a tsamaya a itharabololela marara a thulaganyo le a dintlha tse dingwe ka kakaretso. Mokwadi o fa le puo ya moitse tota sebaka sa go buisa ka kelotlhoko le go akanya ka tlhoafalo.

Mosekaseki o sekasekile kgotlhang jaaka thitokgang ya lekwalo. Kgotlhang e dira gore ditiragalo di ngoke mmuisi. Mogapi o farologanya kgotlhang jaana:

- kgotlhang fa gare ga batho
- kgotlhang fa gare ga dikakanyo tsa motho.

Kgotlhang e, e tliša setlhoa, mme morago e nne kgogedi. O tlišosa kgogedi e le molodi wa padi. Ke mokgwa o mokwadi a tlišang dintlha tse di tsitsibosang maikutlo.

Mogapi o tlišosa bokwadi jo, e le jo bo nonneng ka a dirisitse baanelwa ba ba tšelang ba madi le nama. Ga a dirisa baanelwa ba ba sa tšelang. Ka tsela e, Monyaise ke mokwadi yo o tlišatlhwa.

1.2.1.3. Pretorius, R.S.: *Karakterisering in Bogosi Kupe* (1990)

Pretorius o tlišosa fa Monyaise a dirisitse puo ya poko mo bokwading jwa gagwe, mme a tsaya sekwalwa se: *Omphile Umphi Modise* se tswa mo torong.

Fa moanelwa yo mogolo wa lokwalo lo, a le kwa sekolong kwa Natala, balekane ba gagwe ba ne ba re dikakanyo tsa gagwe ke ditoro fela. Ba mo raya leina ba re ke Umphophi ke gore molori. Morago ba khutsafatsa ba re, Umphi.

Pretorius o tsaya Monyaise e le mokwadi yo o tlišotheleditšweng ke toro mo bokwading jwa gagwe. Fa a tlišothomisa *Omphile Umphi Modise* a re ke sekwalwa sa toro fela. Seno se lemosa fa Monyaise a kgona go senola botshelo jwa nnete jo bo diragalang ka go kwalwa.

1.2.1.4. Manyaka N.J.: *Intertextuality in Setswana. The novels of D.P.S. Monyaise and M.T. Mmileng (1992)*

Manyaka o tthalosa ka mokgwa o Monyaise a tlotlheletsang bakwadi ba bangwe go kwala, mme ba tsaya setaele sa gagwe. Manyaka o dirisitse mafoko a tshwana le kumako ‘*allusion*’, ketsiso ‘*parody*’, ketso ‘*imitation*’, tlotlheletso/phokelelo ‘*influence*’, seamogedi ‘*host*’, motlhampepe ‘*parasite*’ le tlaleletso ‘*supplement*’. Manyaka (1992:3) o tthagisa bokao jwa ona jaana:

Allusion is a term included in intertextuality as it interlinks one text to other text

Seno se tthalosa kamano ya diteng go diteng tsa bakwadi. O tthalosa ‘*Parody*’ jaana: Manyaka (1992:3)

Parody is seen by Cuddon (1992:3) as an imitative use of words, style, attitude, tone and ideas of an another in such a way as to make them ‘ridiculous’, when for instance, the subject matter of a precursor text is parodied, may prove to be a valuable indirect criticism.

O tthalosa ‘*imitation*’ jaana: Manyaka (1992:4)

Imitation in literary cycles is used to describe a literary work which deliberately echoes an older work of art but adapted to its subject matter.

Go ya ka Worton le Still (1960:6) ‘assert’ ke:

Imitation is thus not repetition, but the completion of an act of interpretation.

Manyaka (1992:5) o tlhalosa ‘influence’ jaana:

Influence is a term used in literary history for the impact that a writer, a work, or a school of writers has on an individual writer or work.

Manyaka (1992:6) o tswela pele ka go re:

Influence as a literary strategy helps writers to be more creative in their writings, the influence Monyaise has on other writers in Setswana is wide and very important.

Go ya ka Manyaka (1992:7) ‘parasite’ e tlhalositswe jaana:

Parasite according to Encyclopedia Britannica (Volume 2:1046) a parasite is a specy which lives and feeds on another (host). Their relationships i.e. host and parasite is referred to as a parasitical relationship. Parasitical relationship between the two species of plants or animals in which one plant or animal benefits at the expence of the other usually without killing.

Go ya ka Manyaka (1992:7) a re ‘*host*’ ke:

Host is any person who receives guests in his home. A host is also defined biologically as a or organism that serves as a source of nourishment for another cell or organism called a parasite.

Go ya ka Manyaka (1992:9) ‘*supplement*’ ke:

Supplement means to take place of, to substitute as well as addition.

Seno se bontsha tlhotlheletso e Mmileng a e tsereng mo go Monyaise. Mmileng o tsewa jaaka motlhampepe ‘*Parasite*’ fa Monyaise e le seamogedi ‘*Host*’ go ya ka Manyaka.

Fa go sekasekiwa patlisiso ya ga Manyaka le ya ga Shole, go lemogiwa gore ba dumalana ka gore Monyaise o khueditse bakwadi ba bangwe ba dikwalwa tsa Setswana.

Ke go lemosa go re Monyaise o tlhotlheleditse Mmileng go nna mokwadi wa dikwalwa tsa Setswana. Dikwalwa tsa ga Mmileng, di amana le tsa ga Monyaise ka dikakanyo, mafoko le setaele. Ka tsela e, Monyaise o botlhokwa thata mo dikwalweng tsa Setswana.

1.2.1.5. Shole J.S.: *Time relations in selected novels of Monyaise, Mmileng and Malope (1997)*

Shole o tlhalosa ditlhangwa tsa ga Monyaise ka mokgwa wa boitlhamedikopantsweng jo bošwa ‘*Neofiction*’. Shole (1997:198) o tlhalosa ‘*Neofiction*’ jaana:

Neofiction respects reader’s intelligence and makes him think. It’s generally indirect and opaque style forces the reader to actively participate in narration as he is made to rethink his understanding of the story.

Shole ene o gatelela fa Monyaise a dirisitse puo e e bofitlha mo bokwading jwa gagwe maikaelelo e le go dira mmuisi gore a buise ka kelotlhoko.

1.2.1.6. Malimabe, R.M.: *Motshwarateu (1998)*

Malimabe o tlhalosa diteng tsa padi e a lebeletse, tikologo (lefelu la ditiragalo). Morago ga tshosobanyo ya diteng, o tlhalosa morero kgotsa thitokgang ka gore mo pading e, mokwadi o leka go re bolelela ka ga batho le botshelo ba metsesetoropong. Mokwadi o re tlhagisetsa bonokwane le boferere jwa batho ba metse ya kwa ditoropong.

Malimabe o tlhalosa fa setlhangwa se, *Omphile Umphi Modise* se lebeletse morero wa makgoweng. Botshelo jwa setso jwa Batswana bo

farologana le setso sa Bophirima. Botshelo jwa Batswana bo ikaegile mo thuong le mo temong, fa jwa Bophirima bo ikaegile mo majakong.

Mosekaseki o babatsa tiriso ya setaele mo puong ya maemo a a kwa godimo ya ga Monyaise. O tthalosa fa a dirisitse diane, dikapuo le maadingwa jaaka manatetshapuo.

Go tswa mo ditshekatshekong tse di fa godimo go bonala sentle gore bosekaseki ba ga Malimabe, Mogapi, Shole, Manyaka, Malope le Pretorius ga bo a lebelela matlhotlhapelo mo pading e.

Patlisiso e e ile go farologana le ditshekatsheko tsa basekaseki ba ba kailweng fa godimo ka gonne e theilwe mo godimo ga tshekatsheko/ tlhotlhomiso ya diteng le semelo sa baanelwa mo polotong.

Jaanong maemo a ga Monyaise mo dikwalong tsa Setswana, a ya go lekolwa ka go sekaseka diteng le semelo sa baanelwabagolo mo go: *Omphile Umphi Modise*.

Go na le dikakanyo dingwe tse di botlhokwa tse di tshwanetseng go tthalosiwa ka gonne di na le kamano le patlisiso e.

Ka tsela e, patlisiso e ya go tthalosa dikgopolo tse di latelang: matlhotlhapelo, padithuto ‘*didactic*’; maitsholo ‘*moral*’, pikaresiki/ bokgarakgatshegi ‘*picaresque*’ le phathose ‘*pathos*’. Tthaloso e, jalo e tlile go thusa ka morero o, o golagane le thulaganyo ya poloto ya *Omphile Umphi Modise*.

1.3. TLHALOSO YA DIKGOPOLO

Fa *Omphile Umphi Modise* e ka buisiwa sentle go tllile go tlhokomelwa gore e na le phokelelo ya matlhotlhapelo, masisapelo, thuto, maitsholo le pikaresiki/bolekeledi. Ka jalo, mareo ao a tllile go tlhalosiwa ka bokhutshwane.

1.3.1. Matlhotlhapelo

Bontsi jwa basekaseki ba matlhotlhapelo ba lebaganya matlhotlhapelo le padi. E kete botlhangwa jo jwa matlhotlhapelo bo totisiwa mefutatlhangwa wa terama le padi ka gale. Smith (1983:294) fa a tlhalosa matlhotlhapelo a re:

Tragedy is a drama in which the protagonist falls from happiness to misfortune as a result or tragic flaw. The falling protagonist who elicits from the audience most pity and terror occupies from the beginning a high station of authority.

Smith o gatelela gore mo terameng le mo pading ya matlhotlhapelo molwantshiwa o welwa ke kutlobotlhoko ka ntlha ya makoa a gagwe. Molwantshiwa a ka simolola e le moanelwa wa maemo a a kwa godimo fela o uswa ke botlhaswa jwa tiriso ya maemo ao. Ka jalo, mmuisi ga a itsalanye le ena.

Peck le Coyle (1984:96) le Mogapi (1991:1) le bona tlhaloso ya bona e sa ntse e lebagane le padi ka le bona ba re padi ya matlhotlhapelo ke

mofutakwalwa o mo go ona batho ba le bantsi ba tsenang mo mathateng gongwe ba bo ba latlhegelwe ke matshelo a bona.

Go ya ka Holman (1936:532), matlhotlhapelo, ga a ame padi fela, a ama le dikwalwa tse dingwe mo moanelwa kgotsa motho wa maemo a a kwa godimo, a welwang ke madimabe. Fa a netefatsa kang e ya gagwe Holman a re:

In the middle ages the term tragedy did not refer to drama but to any narrative which recounted how a person of high rank through illfortune or his own vice or terror, fell from high estate to low.

Se se gatelelwang ka matlhotlhapelo ke go re moanelwamogolo wa sekwalwa se, ke yo o utlwelewang botlhoko ke mmuisi ka gale. E bile mofuta o wa sekwalwa, o theilwe mo godimo ga khuduego kgotsa maikutlo a mokwadi. Ka jalo, puo e tshwanetse go nna ya maikutlo a a lebaganeng le kutlobotlhoko (Malimabe, 1995:28).

Tlhaloso e ka jalo e botlhokwa ka gonne e tla thusa mo tshenolong ya semelo sa Motlalepule le sa mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse.

1.3.2. Phatose/ Masisapelo ‘Pathos’

Cuddon (1976:681) fa a tlhalosa masisapelo ‘phatose’ a re:

From the greek root for suffering or deep feeling is the quality in art and literature which stimulates pity, tenseness or sorrow in the reader or viewer.

Se Cuddon a se tthalosang ke kutlobotlhoko e kgolo thata, e e feteletseng ya moanelwamogolo. Ka ntlha ya mathata a a mo diragalelang, mmuisi o gapeletsega go mo utlwela botlhoko. Ke ka ntlha e Preminger le Brogan (1993:889) ba lebaganyang mofuta o wa sekwalwa le go kgotlha maikutlo a mmuisi fa ba re ke:

Evoking an audience's emotion in order to use them as a means of persuasion.

Puo e, e bua gore moanelwa yo o kgotlha maikutlo a mmuisi gore a mo utlwele botlhoko. Mmuisi o utlwisiwa botlhoko thata go tloga kwa tshimologong go ya kwa bokhutlong. Go tla tlhokomelwa gore molwantshiwa wa teng ke motho wa mofuta mang. Ke go re a ke motho wa ka gale fela kgotsa ke yo o tlhokang makoa (Malimabe, 1995:29).

Go ka akaretswa ka go re sekwalwa sa masisapelo 'phatose' se lebagane le kutlobotlhoko e e feteletseng. Le fa ditiragalo tsa teng e le tse di siameng molwantshiwa ena o tsena mo mathateng ka dinako tshotlhe le fa a sena makoa. Tthaloso e e botlhokwa ka gonne go lemosega fa baanelwa ba *Omphile Umphi Modise* e le ba phatose kgotsa nnya.

1.3.3. Pharologano magareng a matlhotlhapelo le masisapelo ‘phatose’

Go bothokwa go tthalosa pharologano ya ditlhangwa tsa mofuta o gore go tle go lemosege thulaganyo ya tsona. Sekwalwa sa matlhotlhapelo se lebagane le mathata a a feteletseng ka gonne se na le diponagalo tsa go utlwiswa bothoko go go feteletseng le fa moanelwamogolo wa sekwalwa sa matlhotlhapelo e le motho wa maemo, o na le go wa mo maemong a a gagwe ka ntlha ya makoa a gagwe a a rileng. Moanelwamogolo wa sekwalwa sa masisapelo ‘phatose’ ena ke motho wa ka gale, ke gore motho fela, yo o se nang makoa, mme le fa go le jalo o welwa ke mathata.

Thulaganyo ya sekwalwa sa masisapelo ‘phatose’ ga e a raraana, fa ya sekwalwa sa matlhotlhapelo e raraane, go ya ka (Malimabe, 1995:129). Pharologano e e fa godimo e, e ka akarediwa ka sethalwa se se latelang.

Matlhotlhapelo	Masisapelo ‘Phatose’
<p>Molwantshiwa</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Moanelwamogolo o na le makoa. ➤ Molwantshiwa ke motho wa maemo. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Moanelwamogolo ga a na makoa fela o wela mo mathateng a a feteletseng. ➤ Molwantshiwa ke motho fela.

<p>➤ Moanelwamogolo o simolola e le motho yo o lesego fela o feletsa ka kutlobotlhoko.</p> <p>Ditiragalo</p> <p>➤ Ditiragalo di raraane.</p>	<p>➤ Moanelwamogolo o utlwisiwa botlhoko go tloga kwa tshimologong go ya kwa bokhutlong.</p> <p>➤ Ditiragalo ga di a raraana.</p>
---	---

1.3.4. Padithuto

Yelland le Jones (1950:46) ba tlhalosa padithuto jaana:

As applied to a literary work the quality of being instructive, particularly in moral and ethical matters.

Maikaelelo a padithuto ke go gatelela go ruta ‘*instruct*’ thuto ya go lebagana le lenaane la thuto. Abrams (1988:42) le Hudson (1961:50) ba gatelela gore thuto e rutiwa ka mokgwa wa lenaneo kwa mafelong a thuto, a go tshwana le kwa sekolong, kerekeng, bosoleng, poletiking, jalo le jalo. Abrams (1988:42) o tswelela pele ka go re:

... the adjective “didactic” (from Greek word meaning “skilled” in teaching) is applied not only to a word that is designed to expound systematically a branch of theoretical, moral, or

practical knowledge, but also to literacy works which embody in a persuasive imaginative or functional form, a moral religious, or philosophical theme or doctrine.

Thuto e e jalo e tlhagiswa gape le mo dikwalweng. Ke ka ntlha e Cuddon (1977:245) le Hudson (1961:50) ba tlhalosang gore maikaelelo a padithuto nngwe le nngwe ke go tokafatsa mekgwa ya go ruta. Ke ka tsela eo Beckson le Ganz (1961:15) ba e tlhalosang jaana:

A work may be considered didactic if its first and foremost aim is to advance teaching, be it moral, political or anything else which is related.

Go tokafatswa ga thuto go lebagane le motho yo o rutiwang. Ke ka ntlha e Marggraff (1994:32) a reng:

The didactic story is being taught, and consists of more than one mere fiction.

Se se botlhokwa se se lebaganeng le padithuto ke go re e ruta motho yo o rileng. Thuto e tshwanetse go nna le lenaneo le le rileng. E tshwanetse go rutiwa mo mafelong a go tshwana le kwa dikolong, dikerekeng le dipoletiking. Go botlhokwa gore e tokafatswe. Tlhaloso e, e botlhokwa ka gonne letlhakore le lengwe la kanedi e, le lebagane le mofuta o wa setlhangwa.

1.3.5. Padiboitsholo

Thames le Hudson (1961:136) ba tlhalosa padiboitsholo jaana:

Morality play is the form of late medieval and early Renaissance drama containing allegorical figures who are frequently involved in the struggle over a man's soul. The term morality play was not used at the time, usually the term moral, pity or godly interlude referred to this type of theoretical presentation. The moralities developed from the combination of the medieval religious drama and such allegories as the Roman de la Rose.

Padiboitsholo e simolotswe go kwalwa metlheng ya bogologolo. E simolotswe go kwalwa ka diterama go gaisa dikwalwa tse dingwe, maikaelelo e le go tsosolosa matshelo a batho. E ne e kwalwa ka go tlhagisa botshelo jwa batho ka ditshwantsho. Motho o rutiwa boitsholo, go nna le kutlwelobotlhoko le boModimo. Ke ka ntlha e, dikwalwa tsa nako eo tsa boitsholo di ne di lebagane le thuto ya bodumedi. Fa a gatelela boitsholo, Abrams (1988:98) o bo golaganya le thuto ya botshelo jwa bokeresete ya go kgalema ditiro tse dimpe. Ka ntlha e, o bua ka ga boitsholo jwa go siama le go se siame. Groenewald (1994:20) o tiisetsa kgang e fa a re:

...is daar 'n ander nitweg om sy Leser se belangstelling te werk, daarmee die vertrouensverhouding tussen hom en sy Leser op

die absolute, universele mensewaardes van goed en kwaad; soek hy dus geen reverdiging vir sake op ander grond nie as die vervat in die genoemde moreel-etiese kode.

Maitsholo a motho a bonagala ka ditiro tsa gagwe tsa go siama kgotsa tsa go se siame. Groenewald (1976:22, 27) o tswelera pele ka go tlhalosa moanelwa wa padi ya boitsholo ka go re o tshwanetse go nna le ditlhokego tsa go siama le makoa, mme karolwana nngwe le nngwe e tlisa kotlo go moanelwamogolo. Botshelo bo lebisitswe go moanelwamogolo. Ga bo a lebiswa go mokwadi kgotsa mmuisi. Seno se tlhalosiwa ke Marggraff (1994:24) ka go re:

It is obvious that many of the characteristics of the leader of the moral story are also applied to the author of the moral story. These serves to strengthen the fact that both the author and the reader are totally excluded the happening in the moral story and have no influence whatsoever in the happenings.

Fa a ruma, Lekganyane (1997:7) a re padiboitsholo e tlhagisa go itshwara ga motho le ka mo motho a godisiwang ka teng. Ka jalo, ke thuto ya ka fa gae, lelapeng kgotsa setšhabeng. Ke thuto e e lebaganeng le maitsholo a mantle kgotsa a a maswe. Ke thuto ya boitsholo jwa motho. Motho yo o itsholang sentle o siame; yo o dirang bobo ga a siama.

Mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise* go na le karolwana ‘*elemente*’ ya boitsholo ke ka moo go leng bothokwa go tthalosa kakanyo e mo patlisisong e.

1.3.6. Bokgarakgatshegi/Pikaresiki

Fa a tthalosa bokgarakgatshegi/pikaresiki, Lekganyane (1997:5) a re ke mofuta wa kanedi e e nang le moanelwamogolo a le mongwe yo o rileng. Fa a tswela pele ka kgang e , Hawthorn (1985:15) a re:

*Picaresque is built on the tradition of the sixteenth
← century ← Spanish picaresque ← a sharp ←
witted ← roque living ← of his wits while
travelling through a variety of usually low life
setting.*

Hawthorn o naya lemorago la tsamaiso ya bokgarakgatshegi/pikaresiki ka go tthalosa gore kanedi e, e tthamilwe mo ngwagakgolong wa somethataro kwa Sepeini. E na le botshameki jwa moanelwamogolo yo o nang le botlhale jo bo rileng. Moanelwamogolo wa bokgarakgatshegi/pikaresiki o tshela le batho ba maemo a a farologaneng mo mafelong a farologaneng, mme ena e le motho wa maemo a a kwa tlase. O fetoga go ya ka mafelo a a leng mo go ona. Chandler (1899:256) o gatelela moanelwa yo ka gore:

*... every picaro... was in short a chameleon,
which takes colour of the cloth on which it is
placed.*

Puo e e tthalosa gore moanelwa yo ke motho wa mathaithai wa go dira ditiro tsa go se ikanyege. Marggarff (1994: 7) o tlaleletsa ka gore mokgarakgatshegi/pikaro ke motho yo o sa ikanyegeng, ke motho yo o belegweng ke diaka le magodu. O tlogela legae a sa le monnye ka ntlha ya tlala le bodidi. O fetsa e le lelata la batho ba bangwe, gape a ithute maitemogelo a bonweenwee. Ke ka ntlha e Cuddon (1991:708) a tthalosang botshelo jwa gagwe ka gore:

Picaresque novel (sp. Picaro 'roque'). It tells a live of a knave of picaroon who is the servant of masters. Through his experience his picaroon satirizes the society in which he lives.

Mo botshelong jwa gagwe o kopana le batho ba ba farologaneng, ba ditiro tse di farologaneng, ba maemo a a farologaneng, jalo le jalo. Ke ka ntlha e go tweng, o na le bathapi ba le bantsi. Ke ka moo Chandler (1899:47) a tiisang se ka gore ke motho yo o dirisiwang ke mongwe le mongwe, gonne ga a gane sepe, ga a itse go itlhophela se a se batlang le se a sa se batleng. Mo go ena se se botlhokwa ke se se leng teng ka nako eo. Ga a na tsholofelo mo go se se tlang. Fa a tswelela pele, Chandler (1899:50) a re: botshelo mo go ena ke bothata jo bo tshwanetseng go tlhokomelwa e seng jo bo siamisiwang. Go ka twe o tsaya loeto. Ke ka ntlha e Baldick (1990:109) a reng:

...it is used to refer to narratives that do not have a picaro as their central character, but which a loose structure consisting of sequence episodes

which are held together only by the central, character, who often embarks on a long journey.

Kgolagano ya dikgaolo e tlisiwa ke moanelwamogolo yo o mo loetong ka gore: gantsi fa e le padi, diteng tsa yona di lebagane le loeto. Loeto lo lo tshwantshanya botshelo, lo na le tshimologo le bokhutlo. Go le gantsi kgaolo nngwe le nngwe e tlhalosa tiragalo e le nngwe ya botshelo jwa moanelamogolo.

Moanelwamogolo yo, o tlhola le go golaganya ditiragalo tse di mo diragalelang mo loetong go batla thuso. Ke ka ntlha e James le Hudson (1961:136) ba tlhalosang fa ditiragalo tsa padi di dikologa moanelwamogolo. Beckson le Ganz (1961:164) ba gatelela seno ka gore:

A vehicle for satire, the picaresque novel, generally narrated in the first person, consists of unconnected episodes held together by the presence of the central character.

Ditiragalo tsa mokgarakgatshegi/pikaro di dirwa ke ene ka boena. Ditiragalo tse di mo diragalelang di golaganngwa ke ena ka go bopa kgang e le nngwe.

Fa Yelland le ba bangwe (1950:135) bona ba ruma ka gore moanelwa yo ga a golaganye ditiragalo le go tlisa kgogedi fela, ke ena a di tlholang le go golaganya dikgaolo tse di farologaneng.

Go tla akarediwa ka gore bokgarakgatshegi/pikaresiki ke kanedi e e nang le moanelwamogolo, wa lenweenwee yo o sa ikanyegeng. O na le bonweenwee gonne o tshela le batho ba ba farologaneng, ka e le wa maemo a kwa tlase. Maemo a gagwe, a mo dira gore a dirisiwe ke mongwe le mongwe yo o kopanang nae. Ga a itse go itlhophela. O tlhola ditiragalo, e bile o a di golaganya. O kopana le ditsala tse di rileng mo botshelong jwa gagwe, mme di mo fetola maikutlo. Moanelwa yo, o mo loetong.

Tlhaloso e, e botlhokwa ka gonne e senolela mmuisi go lemoga fa Motlalepule e le moanelwa wa mofuta o kgotsa nnyaa. Ka jalo, go tllile go wetswa kang e ka go fa dipharologantshego tsa mefutatlhangwa e.

1.3.7. Dipharologano magareng ga matlhotlhapelo, padithuto, padiboitsholo le bokgarakgatshegikwalwa/pikaresiki

- **Moanelwa**

Setlhangwa sa matlhotlhapelo se na le moanelwamogolo yo e leng molwantshiwa. O tsewa e le motho yo o farologaneng le batho ba bangwe ka a dikanyeditswe ke mathata a a mo sitisang go fitlhelela dikeletso tsa gagwe ka ntlha ya go palelwa ke go kgetha se se mo siametseng.

Banelwa ba padithuto e ka nna dikao mo go tlhagiseng thuto e e rileng. Go dirisiwa banelwa ba ba eletsegang go tlhagisa thuto mo pading e. E na le banelwa ba ba tlhagisang molaetsa wa go siama

kgotsa go se siame. Ga e tlhagise baanelwa ba ba tlhagisang molaetsa ka go akanya bobbe.

Padiboitsholo e na le moanelwamogolo yo o tsewang e le mogale. Ke motho yo o tlwaelegileng go tshwana le batho ba bangwe, yo o nang le makoa, a otlhaelwa ditshiamololo tsa gagwe. Ke motho yo o kgonang go kopa maitshwarelo, mme morago a sokologe go dira tshiamo fela.

Moanelwamogolo mo go bokgarakgatshegikwalwa/pikaresiki ke mokgarakgatshegi/pikaro. O kopana le baanelwa ba bangwe mo botshelong jwa gagwe. O dirisa mekgwa e e farologaneng ya bonweenwee jaaka go bua maaka, go tsietsa kgotsa go dirisa ditsela tsa mathaithai go fitlhelela maikaelelo a gagwe.

- **Ditiragalo**

Ditiragalo tsa matlhotlhapelo di tlhagisa kutlwelobotlhoko le letshogo tse di tlholwang ke bosula jo bo welang molwantshiwa.

Ditiragalo tsa padithuto di lebagane le thuto e e rutiwang kwa mafelong a thuto.

Padiboitsholo e tlhalosa ditiragalo tsa thuto tse di lebaganeng le mafelo a kwa gae kgotsa kwa go godisetswang bana kwa teng.

Bokgarakgatshegikwalwa/pikaresiki e na le ditiragalo tse di sa tlhamalalang sentle tse di diragalelang mokgarakgatshegi/pikaro. Di lebagane le bonweenwee jo bo tlhagelelang.

- **Tikologo**

Matlhotlhapelo a diragalela molwantshiwa mo mafelong a a farologaneng a ditiragalo.

Ditiragalo tsa padithuto di diragalela kwa mafelong a a farologaneng a thuto.

Padiboitsholo yona e diragalela kwa gae.

Bokgarakgatshegikwalwa/pikaresiki e diragalela kwa mafelong a mantsi ka gonne mokgarakgatshegi/pikaro a le mo loetong.

- **Morero**

Morero wa matlhotlhapelo o lebagane le go tsibosa babuisi ka ga tshotlego e e tseneletseng ya molwantshiwa mo mafelong a a ditiragalo.

Morero wa padithuto o totile go rutiwa kwa mafelong a thuto.

Morero wa padiboitsholo o gatelela maitsholo go gaisa thata kwa sekolong, e bapisa go siama le go se siame ga moanelwamogolo.

Bokgarakgatshegikwalwa/pikaresiki e na le thuto e e gatelelang loeto mo botshelong go tloga kwa tshimologong go fitlha kwa bokhutlong.

1.4. MOKGWA WA PATLISISO

Patlisiso e tlhophile mekgwa e mebedi fela go tthalosa ‘*to define*’ le go ranola ‘*to interpret*’ ka gonne mekgwa e, e lebagane le yona. Mareo a go ya ka puo ya metlheng a batlile a tshwana. Ka jalo, patlisiso e gatelela gore mareo a mabedi a go tthalosa le go ranola a ya go farologanngwa.

1.4.1. Go tthalosa

Kgatla (2000:17) a re go tthalosa ke go naya puo e tseneletseng ya selo, go utulola dipharologanyo tsa sona gore sebopego se nne mo pepeneneng. Seno se gatelelwa ke *The Concise Oxford English Dictionary* (1999:386) ka go re go tthalosa ke:

To give a detailed account in words, of something.

Ke ka ntlha eo Serudu (1989:25) a reng go tthalosa:

Ke go tšweletšwa ka mantšu sebopego, seemo goba kamano ya selo se tee le tše dingwe.

Fano go gatelelwa gore go tthalosa go lebagane le go neela ditiro tsa dipharologantshe tsa sekwalwa gore di tthaloganyege sentle. Ke ka ntlha e Serudu (1989: 25) a buang gore go amana le kutlwisiso:

(Go tthalosa go lebane le) go hlaloša sengwalo go laetša ge e le gore o a se kwešiša.

Wales (1995: 256) o tiisetsa tlhaloso eno ka go re:

It means understanding; understanding language of a text, and understanding its meaning and text theme(s).

O gatelela gore go tlhalosa go golagane le go tthaloganya molaetsa wa setlhangwa.

Go tla rungwa ka gore go tlhalosa go lebagane le go tthagisa diponagalo tsa se se tthalosiwang e leng setlhaloswa. Go tthalosa, ke go tthisa kitso ka mokgwa wa go bua ka botlalo ka ga sengwe se se sa tthaloganngweng.

Ka jalo, go botlhokwa go tthalosa kakanyo e ya go tthalosa mo patlisisong e ka gone go tthile go tthalosiwa dikgopolo tsothe tse di buiwang mo patlisisong e.

1.4.2. Go ranola

Fa a tthalosa go ranola Abrams (1988:127) a re:

In a narrow sense, to interpret a word of literature is to specify the meaning of its language by analysis, paraphrase and commentary. Usually such interpretation focuses on especially secure, ambiguous or figurative passages.

Ratori yono o kaya gore go ranola ke go baya bokao jo bo fitlhegileng thata mo pepeneneng gore bo tthaloganyege. Shipley (1968:92) ena a re go ranola go lebagane le go tthalosa mafoko a a botlhokwa a setlhangwa. Trail (2000:7) o tlaleletsa se ka go re:

The literary approach concentrating on the historical author and his personality or on interpreting the text as a 'message' the Author wishes us to share in falls into the trap of oversimplifying the real nature of the literary text.

Go ranola go thusa mmuisi thata go tthaloganya molaetsa o mokwadi a o kwadileng. Mojalefa (1995:30) o ruma kakanyo e ka gore go ranola go lebagane le fa dikgang di tthalosiwa, mme morago di gatelelwa ka mabaka gore mmuisi a kgone go di tthaloganya.

Go tla wetswa ka go re go ranola go lebagane le go senola bokao jwa mafoko mo setlhangweng le go tthagisa dipharologantsho tsa selo se se tthalosiwang gore sebopego kgotsa seemo sa sona se kgone go tthaloganyega sentle. Ka jalo, tthaloso ya go ranola e botlhokwa mo patlisisong e ka gonne e tlile go thusa go tsewedisa tshekatsheko ya dikakanyo tse di botlhokwa.

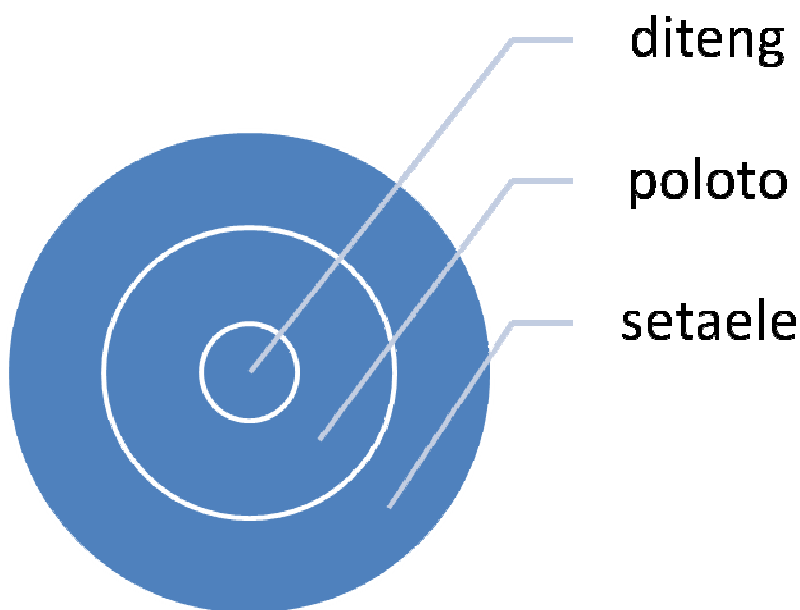
Mareo a, go tthalosa le go ranola ke ona a a yang go dirisiwa fa go sekasekiwa diteng le semelo sa banelwabagolo mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise*.

1.5. MMOTLOLO WA BOANEDI ‘NARRATOLOGICAL MODEL’

Mo patlisisong e, maikaelelo ke go tthalosa diteng le semelo sa baanelwabogolo mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise* ka go latela sekao sa kanedipatlisiso ‘*narratology*’.

Pele go tla lebelelwa ka fa boratiori ba boanedi ‘narratoloji’ jaaka boStrachan, Genette, Groenewald le Mojalefa ba tthalosang sebopego sa setlhangwa ka teng.

Genette (1980:27) le Strachan (1988:2) ba tthalosa popego ya setlhangwa fa e le hisetori ‘*geskiedenis*’ kgang ‘*verhaal*’ le seradiso ‘*teks*’ . Groenewald (1993:4) le Malimabe (1997:2) bona ba a bitsa diteng, poloto le setaele. Groenewald (1993:4) o tthalosa sebopego sa setlhangwa jaaka lekakaba la eie ka setshwantsho se se latelang:



Go tswelera pele o tthalosa gore letlalo le le ka fa gare ke la diteng, le le latelang la diteng ke poloto fa la bofelo e le setaele. Matlalo a mararo a, go ya ka tthaloso ya Groenewald le Mojalefa a ile go tthaloswa ka botlalo go lemosa botlhokwa jwa ona mo patlisisong e.

1.5.1. Letlalo la diteng

Go ya ka Strachan (1988:5) le Mojalefa (1996:4) diteng ke letlalo la ntlha la setlhangwa. Go tswelera pele, Groenewald (1993:4) o gatelela se ka go re:

Letlalo la diteng ke ditaba ge di lemogwa ka botšona, pele ga ge mongwadi a bolela/ngwala ka ga tšona, pele ga ge a di hlaloša.

Se, se tthalosa gore ga se mokwadi yo o tlhamang diteng. O fitlhela di ntse di le teng, mme ene a kwale ka ga tsona. Mohlala (1994:25) o tthalosa gore ditiragalo tsa diteng di a latelana. Groenewald (1992:2) o tthalosa tatelano eo ka go re:

...tatelano yeo e laolwa ke melao yeo motho a e tlwaetšego, ke tatelano yeo e kwalago.

Malebana le tatelano e e jalo ya ditiragalo, Groenewald (1992:2) a re yona e lebagane le moanelwa. Ke go re se a se dirang le se se mo diragalelang kgotsa se se mo welang fa dikgang di ntse di fetoga ka tatelano ya tsona. Strachan (1988:5) ene a re :

Hiervan is die geskiedenis die laag wat die leser uit die verhaal kan rekonstrueer deur onder meer die gebeurtenis in chronologiese volgorde te plaas.

Tatelano eo e laolwa ke melao ya botshelo eo motho a e tlwaetseng. Groenewald (1993:4) o ruma ka go re dikgang tse go buiwang ka ga tsona, di bofagannwa ke setlhogo gore di nne selo se le sengwe.

1.5.1.1. Setlhogo

Mojalefa (1993:33) le Mohlala (1994:25) ba tlhalosa fa setlhogo e le kgang e e buiwang, kgotsa e e rerwang. Marggraff (1994:61) ene o di baya jaana:

When a point is reached at which reality cannot be abstracted any further, when a final abstraction is reached, then one refers to the topic of the story.

Marggraff o gatelela gore setlhogo ke tshosobanyo ya bokhutlo e e ka se keng ya sosobanngwa go feta foo.

Groenewald (1991:12) le Mojalefa (1994:2) ba tlhalosa fa setlhogo se bofaganya diteng gore di nne ngatana e le nngwe. Ka jalo, setlhogo se botlhokwa.

1.5.1.2. Botlhokwa jwa setlhogo

Fa a tlhalosa botlhokwa jwa setlhogo, Mojalefa (1994:3) a re se tshwaraganya ditiragalo gore di nne seoposengwe. O tswela pele ka go re:

- *Sererwa se laola ditiragalo*
- *Se laola tikologo, nako le felo.*
- *Mongwadi o phetha moo ditaba di thomago gona le moo di felelago gona.*
- *Sepheho seo se laolwa ke sererwa.*
- *Sererwa se lemoša mmadi ditiragalo.*

Go lemogilwe gore diteng di na le dielemente tse nne, e leng, baanelwa, ditiragalo, nako le lefelo. Dielemente tse ke tsona di bopang kgang. Dikgang tse di golaganngwa ke setlhogo go nna seoposengwe.

1.5.2. Letlalo la thulaganyo

Marggraff (1994:65) a re thulaganyo ke letlalo la bobedi la sekwalwa.

Mohlala (1994:25) o tswela pele ka gore:

*...letlalo le lebane le mokgwa woo mokwadi a o
šomišago go rulaganya ditabataba tša gagwe.*

Seno se tlhalosa gore thulaganyo ke dikgang tse di rulagantsweng. BoYelland (1993:136) ba tlhalosa fa dikgang tse di rulagantsweng di

bopa motheo. Kwa ntle le gore di na le motheo. Brooks (1979:33) a re go na le sengwe se se botlhokwa, e leng, ‘*action*’:

Plot, then, is the meaningful manipulation of action. The teller of a story whether in idle conversation or in the serious business of writing a novel, cannot possibly use all thousand of facts that seem to him useful for his particular purpose.

Puo ya ga Brooks (1979:33) e tlhalosa gore mokwadi o tlhopha dintlha tse di botlhokwa fa a rulaganya ditiragalo. Abrams (1988:159) le Cuddon (1991:72) ba gatelela gore tatelano eo ya ditiragalo e tlhagisiwa ke maikutlo le bokgabo. BoYelland (1979:136) fa ba tsweledisa ntlha e pele ba e golaganya le ngangego. Ba re:

It is an artificial arrangement of incidents, the main purpose of which is to capture and hold the interest and provide an artificially satisfying conclusion.

Se se botlhokwa ke fa mokwadi a ngoka mmuisi gore a buisetse kwa pele. Fa a buisetsa kwa pele o tla itse molaetsa wa sekwalwa. Groenewald (1991:22) le Mojalefa (1995:10) ba tlhalosa gore maikaelelo a mokwadi a tlhagisiwa ke thitokgang. Groenewald (1992:22) o tlhalosa se ka gore:

Mongwadi o ikgethela ditabataba le ditiragalo tše a ratago go di šomiša ge a ngwala sengwalo. Ge

(mongwadi) a rata a ka oketša ka ditlhalošo tše dingwe tše di sa kwanego le diteng... gomme ditaba tše ka moka di rulagangwa gore di lebane le maikemišetšo/tebanyo ya gagwe; ditaba di fiwa morero; ke go re baanegwa, ditiragalo, nako le felo (dielemente tša kanego) di ba le modiro.

Groenewald o gatelela gore dikarolwana ‘elements’ tsa poloto di fiwa tiro. Mo godimo ga moo o tshalosa go tswaledisa pele botlhokwa jwa thitokgang ka gore ke yona e e golaganyang ditiragalo tsa thulaganyo gore e nne selo se le sengwe. Patlisiso e ya go tshalosa thitokgang.

1.5.2.1. Thitokgang

Cohen (1973:198) o tshalosa gore thitokgang ke kgankgolo mo sekwalweng. Meyer (1989:185) ene o e tshalosa jaana:

(Theme) is a central idea or meaning of a story. It provides a unifying point around which the plot, characters, setting, point of view, symbols and other elements of a story are organized.

Thitokgang e golaganya le go baakanya dielemente tsa poloto, e leng, baanelwa, ditiragalo le tikologo. Ke ka ntlha eo Groenewald (1991:23) le Mojalefa (1993:74) ba netefatsang se ka gore ke motheo o o laolang go rulaganngwa ga dikgang gore e nne sekwalwa. Groenewald (1991:23) a re sekwalwa se tshwanetse go nna le tebelelo e e rileng:

*Ge mongwadi a ngwala sengwalo o hlaloša
kgopolo/tebelelo ya gagwe mabapi le taba goba
tiragalo e a e lemogago mo bophelong.*

Go ya ka puo ya ga Groenewald thitokgang e na le mosola o mogolo mo sekwalweng. Patlisiso e ya go rungwa ka go tthalosa botlhokwa jwa thitokgang.

Fa a ruma botlhokwa jo, Groenewald (1993:5) a re:

*Bo tlemaganya ditaba tša thulaganyo gore di be
kgopana e tee, le go di swaraganya/tlemaganyo
gore di lebane.*

Go tswelala pele o gatelela gore go na le ditsejwana tse di fapaafapaaneng tsa go rulaganya dikgang. Ditsejwana tseo ke dithekiniki. Thekeniki e tla tthalosiwa kwa pele. A re thekiniki e ka tthalosiwa fa e le kakanyo e e lemogiwang ka ponalo e le nngwe kgotsa go feta. Diponagalo tseo di thusa go tsweledisa pele thitokgang.

1.5.3. Letlalo la setaele

Letlalo le la setaele ga le tlile go tthalosiwa ka botlalo mo patlisisong e ka gonne ga se karolo ya patlisiso. Botlhokwa jwa tthaloso e khutshwane e, e golagane le gore letlalo le ke karolo ya popego ya sekwalwa.

Magapa (1997:15) o tthalosa fa setaele e le letlalo la boraro la sekwalwa. Marggraff (1994:69) o gatelela se ka go re:

*The third narrative level referred to as ‘narration’
in actual fact deals with style.*

Ke ka ntlha e Rimmon-Kenan (1983:3) a gatelelang gore ke letlalo le le lebaganeng le tiriso ya puo. Cuddon (1991:872) o gatelela se ka go re:

The characteristic manner of expression in prose or verse; how a particular writer says things. The analysis and assessment of style involves examination of a writer’s choice of words, his figures of speech, the devices (rhetoric and otherwise), the shape of his sentences, the shape of his paragraphs-indeed, of every conceivable aspect of his language and the way in which he uses it.

Go tlhagisa setaele mokwadi a ka dirisa puo ya tlhopho ya mafoko, dikarolo tsa puo, dithekeniki le paakanyo ya dipolelo le ditemana. New Encyclopedia Britanica (1990:vol.23:90:2a) e tswelletsa pele kgang e ka go re:

But style cannot really be said to exist on paper; it is the way the mind of the author expresses itself in words. Since words represent ideas, there cannot be abstract literature unless a collection of nonsense syllables can be admitted as literature.

Mokwadi o kgona go tlhaloganyega ka puo ya gagwe mo sekwalweng. Groenewald (1994:5) o tiisetsa nopollo e ka gore setaele se bonagatsa sekwalwa gore mmuisi a kgone go se buisa. Groenewald (1993:28) o ruma dikgopolo tsa basekaseki bao ka gore:

Maikutlo a mongwadi mabapi le taba ye a e bolelago, a e hlalošago, a sepedišana le khuduego. Ke ka lebaka leo re rego polelo e tšwetšapele khuduego... Ka mongwalelo mokwadi o kgona go tswalanya mmadi le tebelelo ya gagwe.

Se se botlhokwa ka setaele ke khuduego ya mokwadi ka gore ka yona khuduego e, o kgona go ikgolaganya le mmuisi. Fa go sekasekiwa puo le setaele, khuduego e botlhokwa.

1.6. TSAMAISO YA DIKGANG

Mo kgaolong ya ntlha go tlhokometswe botlhokwa jwa ga Monyaise tebang le dikwalwa tsa Setswana. Go tswelala pele gona mo kgaolong e, ga lebelelwa maikaelelo a babatlisisi bangwe bao ba sekasekileng sekwalwa se, *Omphile Umphi Modise*, e leng, yona padinyana eo e tlileng go sekasekiwa. Se se lemogilweng ka bona ke gore basekaseki ba, ga ba e sekaseka ka botlalo. Ke ka ntlha e patlisiso e tlileng go sekaseka diteng le dimelo tsa baanelwabagolo mo pading e.

Go latetse mokgwa wa patlisiso, mme morago ga tlhalosiwa dikgopolo tsa diteng, thulaganyo le setaele, e leng, ona matlalo a mararo a

popego ya sekwalwa. Tlhaloso ya matlalo a, e thusa mmuisi go tlhaloganya le go sekaseka sekwalwa go tlhokometswe diteng le semelo sa baanelwa.

Go tloga mo kgaolong ya ntlha, lenaneo le le tlileng go dirisiwa ke le: kgaolo ya ntlha ke tlhaloso ya tsamaiso, mo kgaolong ya bobedi go ile go tthalosiwa diteng tsa *Omphile Umphi Modise*, ka go di akaretsa gore mmuisi a kgone go latela le go tlhaloganya patlisiso.

Morago ga tthalosiwa dielemente tsa diteng, e leng baanelwa, ditiragalo, nako le lefelo le go senola mosola wa tsona mo sekwalweng. Ka jalo, kgaolo ya bobedi e theilwe mo godimo ga tshosobanyo ya ditiragalo tsa diteng, setlhogo sa *Omphile Umphi Modise*, tlhaloso ya dielemente tsa diteng, e leng, baanelwa, ditiragalo, nako le lefelo le tshosobanyo ya tiriso ya tsona.

Kgaolo ya boraro e tlile go tthalosa dikgopolo tse: thitokgang, kakanyetso, dikgato tsa thulaganyo. Baanelwabagolo ba padi e, e leng molwantshiwa, molwantshi ba a senolwa. Tlhaloso e, e tlile go theiwa mo godimo ga tiriso ya dikakanyo tseo mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise*.

Mo kgaolong ya bone, gone go tla tlhokomelwa semelo sa molwantshiwa go tlhokometswe tlhoko dipharologantsho di le tlhano, e leng, bontle, go tlhoka lesego, go sotlega, kutlobotlhoko le bohumanegi tseo mokwadi a di tlhalosang ka dithekeniki.

Kgaolo ya botlhano e tlile go tthalosa semelo sa molwantshi go lebeletswe pharologantsho e le nngwe fela, e leng boeteledipele jo bo tthalosiwang ke dithekeniki tse di dirisitsweng ke mokwadi.

Kgaolo ya borataro e ile go itebaganya le bokhutlo ba dikgang tsa patlisiso e, ke go re go ya go sosobanngwa dikgaolo tse tlhano tsa tlhotlhomiso e. Ke gore mo kgaolong ya borataro go tla tlhokomelwa tshosobanyo ya dikgaolo tsotlhe.

KGAOLO YA BOBEDI

2.1. DITENG

Kgaolo ya bobedi e lebagane le tlhaloso le tiriso ya diteng.

2.1.1. Matseno

Mo kgaolong e, patlisiso e ya go dirisa lenaane le le latelang go tlhalosa diteng tsa setlhangwa.

- (a) Kakaretso ya diteng go sedimosetsa mmuisi, go latela tshekatsheko ya *Omphile Umphi Modise*.
- (b) Setlhogo sa *Omphile Umphi Modise* le
- (c) Dielemente tsa diteng.

- Baanelwa
- Ditiragalo
- Nako
- Lefelo

- (d) Tiriso ya dielemente tsa diteng.

2.1.2. Tshosobanyo ya ditiragalo tsa diteng

Motlalepule, mosetsana wa mabono a mantle, o goroga kwa Gouteng a tswa motsaneng wa Maikutlwane mo tikologong ya Ditsobotla. O

rakana le mosimane wa tedu tsa katse. Mosimane yo o bitsa Motlalepule Maria. Motlalepule ga a itse ope mo Gouteng, le gale o ineela basetsana bangwe ba babedi; ka bona a bona bonno mo 275 Lakasanta. Ga feta dingwaga tse pedi a nna foo, a dira mo meseseng mo Doornfontein e le mophelaesi. Ka go lemoga gore basetsana ba fufegela bontle jwa gagwe, o hudugela kwa difoleteng go ya go iponela borobalo gona, ntekwane o ya go tsena mo leganong la tau.

Kwa difoleteng go dira Thandi mosetsana wa kwa Natala yo ka ntata ya go fufegela bontle jwa ga Motlalepule, o mo tsheleng more mo mogodungwaneng. Motlalepule o tshwarwa ke boroko, mme mosimane wa tedu tsa katse, tsala ya ga Thandi, o fa Motlalepule mpa ya dikgora. Motlalepule ga a ka a itse gore rraagwe morwae ke mang. O taya morwae leina la Omphile, mme o mmaya letshwao ka fa morago ga tsebe. Ka ntlha ya kutlobotlhoko le tlalelo o tsaya Omphile o mo isa kwa Ikageleng kwa Olanti. Ke ntlo ya kgodisetso ya bana.

Dingwaga tse pedi morago ga tiragalo e, Motlalepule nyalwa ke mosimane wa Thaba-Ntsho, mme ba segofadiwa ka ngwana wa mosetsana, Mosidi. Motlalepule a bidiwa MmaMosidi, mme mosimane wa Thaba-Ntsho ya nna RraMosidi. MmaMosidi o tshwarela RraMosidi sephiri sa ga Omphile.

Omphile o fetoga lesiela la khutsana e tswe batsadi ba gagwe ba tshela, o tsholwa ke morwadia Ofentse wa Matile le mogatse, mme bona ba mo abela monnamogolo Ofentse. Kwa Matile, Omphile o tewa leina la Modise, fa leina la tlhaletso go twe Umphi. Morwadia Ofentse le mogatse ya nna MmaModise le RraModise. Modise o

golela kwa Matile. O simolola go disa dipotsane le dikwana, mme morago o disa dikgomo. Rremogolo Ofentse o mo ruta Setswana tota.

Kwa Gouteng MmaMosidi o lopa RraMosidi gore ba batle ngwana wa mosimane kwa Olanti gore ba mo ikgodisetse. MmaMosidi ga a ka a bolelela RraMosidi fa a batla morwa wa gagwe wa dikgora. MmaMosidi o tlhoka morwa wa gagwe Omphile. O gana go tsaya yo mongwe. O simolola go batla mo mebileng ya motse. Malebela o bolelela MmaMosidi gore o batla selo se se leng gare ga mpa ya lefatshe.

MmaMosidi o etela kwa Maikutlwane, mme o bona Modise mo basimaneng ba motshameko wa lofetlho, fela ga a mo itse. O rothisa keledi fa a bona mosimane yo moleele, yo o matsatsarapa. MmaMosidi o koafala mmele ka go nna a gopola morwaagwe. Ga a itse gore a Omphile o a tshela kgotsa o sule. O batla le kwa mabitleng fa a mo gopotse.

Motlalepule o ya kwa go mosadimogolo Malebela gape, mme o mmolelela fa a tla bona selo se a se batlang kwa bokhutlong. Morago ga foo, mosadimogolo Malebela o a tlhokafala. Ka nako e a tlhokafalang ka yona le monnamogolo Ofentse o a tlhokafala.

Modise o dira le Keoletile le mosadi wa gagwe. Mosadi wa ga Keoletile, e ne e le mogatsa Malebo, Malebo o dira le rraagwe Modise mo dikantorong tsa Baitiredi kwa Mangaung. O rometswe teng go ya go ithuta tiro, mme o tshwanetse go boela Lakasanta go tla go tsweledisa tiro ya gagwe.

Modise o nyala Matlakala, morwadia Seagile. Ba gotse mmogo kwa Matile. MmaMosidi o boela kwa Maikutlwane. Modise le Matlakala ba ya go mo lekola. Motlalepule o kopa Modise go mo atamela. O mo lebelela ka fa morago ga tsebe moo a mmeileng letshwao gona morago ga go mmelega. Motlalepule o bona letshwao leo mo go Modise, o ngaa jaaka ntšwa; o mmita Omphile. O a kgotsofala, morago o a tlhokafala.

MmaMosidi o tlogela lekwalongyana leo a tlhalosang gore o belege ngwana wa mosimane go twe Omphile, yo o isitsweng Olanti. Lekwalo le fitlhelwa ke RraMosidi. Modise le RraMosidi ba itse sephiri sa ga Motlalepule.

Modise le Matlakala ba fiwa ngwana wa mosetsana go twe ke Kemoneemang.

Tsholofelo ke go re khutshwafatso e ya diteng, e tla nna mosola mo go tlhaloganyeng tshekatsheko fa e ntse e tswelela.

2.1.3. Setlhogo

Setlhogo ke kang e e buiwang kgotsa e e rerwang mo sekwalweng. Ke tshosobanyo e e ka se tlholeng e sosobanngwa go feta foo. Setlhogo mo pading e ke *Omphile Umphi Modise* e le matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule. Kutlobotlhoko eo e bonagala ka tsela e:

Motlalepule o ya go batla tiro kwa Gouteng, a tswa kwa Maikutlwane. Fa a goroga, o simolola go bona mathata a kwa motseseteropong. Kwa

boemela-setimeleng, mosimane wa tedu tsebeng, o latlhela sekgwama sa madi fa fatshe. O gopola gore Motlalepule o tla se tsaya mme ga a se tseye. O bitsa Motlalepule “Maria”. Motlalepule ga a itse ope mo Gouteng, mme o ineela basetsana ba 275 Lakasanta, go nna le bona. Ga ba mo rate gonne o ba gaisa ka bontle. O simolola go lemoga gore ba mo logela maano a go mmolaya. O tloga foo, o ya kwa difoleteng go ya go nna teng. Kwa difoleteng o rakana le Thandi mosetsana wa kwa Natala. Thandi ke mmamoratwa. O lemoga gore Motlalepule o montle go mo gaisa. O a fufega. O mo logela maano. O dira mogodungwana, o o tshela more wa go robatsa, morago o bitsa Motlalepule. Ka fa phaposing ya ga Thandi, Motlalepule o fitlhela Thandi a dutse le mosimane wa tedu tsa katse yoo Thandi a mmitsang gore ke kgaitsadie. Motlalepule o fitlha a nwa mogodungwana o o tshetsweng more oo. Morago ga go nwa mogodungwana, Motlalepule o tshwarwa ke boroko. Mosimane wa tedu tsa katse, o betelela Motlalepule, mme o mo naya mpa ya dikgora. Mathata a ga Motlalepule a simolola gona foo.

Motlalepule ga a boele gae kwa Maikutlwane. O dula mo Gouteng le mosadimogolo MmaSebolai. Morago ga dikgwedi tse di robongwe o fiwa morwa. O mmaya letshwao ka fa morago ga tsebe. O mo naya leina la Omphile. Mosadimogolo MmaSebolai le Motlalepule ba tsaya ngwana Omphile ba mo isa kwa kgodisetsong kwa Ikageleng. Morago ga dingwaga tse pedi Motlalepule a ntse a isitse Omphile kwa kgodisetsong, o nyalwa ke mosimane wa Thaba-Ntsho. Ba fiwa ngwana wa mosetsana go twe Mosidi. Motlalepule a bitswa MmaMosidi fa mosimane wa Thaba-Ntsho e nna RraMosidi. MmaMosidi ga a ka a kgotsofala. O batla morwa wa gagwe yo

RraMosidi a sa mo itseng. O mmatlela mo sephiring. Seno se koafatsa Motlalepule go fitlha a swa.

2.2. TLHALOSO YA DIELEMENTE TSA DITENG

Patlisiso e lemogile gore diteng di theilwe mo godimo ga dielemente tse nne. Tsona ke: baanelwa, ditiragalo, nako le felo.

2.2.1. Baanelwa

Serudu (1989:31-32) a re baanelwa ke batho ba mokwadi a ba dirisang mo sekwalweng. O tswelela pele ka go re moanelwa ke:

Seakanywa sa mongwadi seo se nago le boitshwaro, maikutlo, 'bomotho', seo se di tšweletšago ka poledišano le tiro. Ga se motho wa nama le madi, eupša ke kemedi ya motho tsoko yo a phelago go ba yo a ka phelago. Gape mongwadi a ka diriša le diphoofole go ba baanegwa ba gagwe. Le ge go le bjalo diphoofole tšeo di emela batho.

Mojalefa (1995:6) le Ronen (1994:143) ba gatelela tlhaloso ya ga Serudu ka go re ke batho ba ba tshelang mo lefatsheng la sekwalwa. Mojalefa (1993:42) o tswelela pele ka go re ga se batho fela le diphologolo, dithaba, matlapa, digagabi e ka nna baanelwa. Ke ka ntlha e Strachan (1988:11) ene a reng, baanelwa ke didiragatsi 'akteurs':

... akteurs word beskou as instansies wat handelingte verrig. Hulle is nie noodwendig menslik nie, 'n hond, of 'n masjien kan byvoorbeeld as akteur optree.

Go gatelelwa gore baanelwa ga se batho fela, ka gore le dilo e ka nna baanelwa. Ka go rialo, go tla nna botoka gore ba tlhalosiwe jaaka ditshameki/didiragatsi.

Ke ka ntlha e Bal (1980:14-15) a buang ka ga bona ka gore ga se batho 'personasies' fela, ke batshameki/didiragatsi 'akteurs' le dikai 'instansies'.

Fa a ruma dikgopolo tsa boratorium ba, Mojalefa (1995:6) o arola baanelwa ka ditlhopho tse pedi:

Baanegwa bao ba tlo arolwa ka magoro gore go tle go kgonwe go lemogwa kamano ya bona ge ba phela lefaseng leo la bona la go hlolwa ke mongwadi wa sengwalo seo.

Baanelwa botlhe ba botlhokwa fela go na le baanelwabagolo bao ba laolwang ke setlhogo.

2.2.2. Ditiragalo

Marggraff (1994:62) fa a tlhalosa ditiragalo a re:

An event can be defined as a manifestation of something taking place, the length of which can defer, having a beginning and an end ranging from concrete physical actions to abstract thoughts, feeling or speculations.

Nopolo eno, e tlhalosa gore ditiragalo di na le tshimologo le bokhutlo.

Strachan (1988:7) o tlhalosa tatelano ya ditiragalo tseo ka go re:

Die gebeurtenisse in die geskiedenis volg uiteraard chronologiese op mekaar.

Fa a tswelela pele a re tsona ditiragalo tseo di diragalela baanelwa, e bile di dirwa ke bona baanelwa bao, mme o tlhalosa gore di lemogwa ka phetogo.

Mojalefa (1995:4) o wetsa dikakanyo tsa boratoriori ba ka go tlhalosa gore ditiragalo di lebagane le mo mokwadi wa sekwalwa a dirang tshimologo le bokhutlo ba diteng, mme yona tiro eo e laolwa ke setlhogo. Setlhogo seo se tlhalosiwa gore ke tshosobanyo ya ditiragalo tsa sekwalwa.

Go tla rungwa ka go re ditiragalo di senolwa fa di diragalela baanelwa e bile di dirwa ke bona baanelwa bao.

2.2.3. Nako

Raban (1972:58) o tthalosa nako jaana:

...the novelist is in a special sense answerable to history: his story is located within a particular area of time, and every detail of the décor, every snatch of dialogue, every action of the characters, must be appropriate to the period in which the novel is set.

Kgannyana e e kwalwang e tsamaelana le nako e e rileng. Ka jalo, nako, e laola ditiragalo tsa kanedi. Fa a tiisetsa seno Strachan (1988:14), a re fa go buiwa ka nako, ga go tewe nako e mokwadi a e tsayang go rulaganya dikgang tsa gagwe. Go tewa nako e ditiragalo di diragalang ka yona:

Tyd, soos dit in die geskiedenislaag hanteer word, het uit die aard van die saak nie te make met die hoeveelheid tyd wat aan die vertelproses bestee word nie. Gevolglik word dit dan ook nie in terme van byvoorbeeld 'aantal bladsye' gemeet nie. Die tyd van die geskiedenis hou alleenlik verband met die tyd wat deur die gebeurtenisse in beslag, geneem word (ook narratologiese tyd genoem) en die tydvak waarbinne die gebeurtenisse hulle afspeel (die historiese tyd)

Strachan o tlhalosa gore ditiragalo di latelana go ya ka nako. Nako e arogantswe ka dikarolo tse pedi, e leng, nako ya kanedi ‘*narratologiese tyd*’ le nako ya hisetori ‘*historiese tyd*’.

Ke ka ntlha e Marggraff (1994:63) a rumang ka gore:

The time of the story relates to the time which is occupied by the events (narratological time) and the epoch period in which the events take place (historical time)

Nako e botlhokwa fa go sekasekwa diteng go lemosa mmuisi gore kgannyana e e kwalwang e tsamaelana le nako eo e arogantsweng ka dikarolo tse pedi, e leng, nako ya kanedi le nako ya hisetori, gore mmuisi a kgone go tlhaloganya tatelano ya ditiragalo.

2.2.4. Lefelo

Fa Strachan (1988:16) a tlhalosa lefelo a re ke nngwe ya dielemente tsa diteng. Steenberg le Du Plessis (1992:101) ba tsweledisa pele kgopolo e ka go re:

Met hierdie ‘plek word dan gewoonlik die blote plek waar die storie afspeel bedoel’.

Lefelo ke moo batshameki ba tshelang gona, ba dirang ditiro tse di rileng le gona ba diragalelwang ke ditiragalo tse di rileng.

Ke ka ntlha e Marggraff (1994:64) le Mojalefa (1995:9) ba gatelelang kgopolo e ka gore lefelo ke moo batshameki ba dirang e bile ba diragalelwang ke ditiragalo gona.

Brooks le ba bangwe (1979:10) ba wetsa dikgopolo tsa boratoriori ba ka go re: lefelo ke lona le tsosolosang maikutlo a mmuisi gonne le tlhagisa mowa o o renang mo batshameking. Ba re:

A story occurs, after all, in a particular place, and places provoke, however minimally, certain feelings...

Lefelo le tlhalosiwa e le mo batshameki ba tshelang gona go dira ditiro tse di rileng, maikaelelo e le go senolela mmuisi maikutlo mo botshameking le gore batshameki le ditiragalo tsa bone di tlhaloganyege sentle.

2.3. TIRISO YA DIELEMENTE TSA DITENG

Dielemente tsa diteng tse di ileng go tlhokomelwa fa go batlisisiwa *Omphile Umphi Modise* ke baanelwa, ditiragalo, nako le lefelo.

2.3.1. Baanelwa ba diteng

Go ya ka Mojalefa (1995:6) baanelwa ba diteng ba arogantswe ka ditlhopha gore go tle go kgonwe go lemoga kamano ya bona, fa ba tshela mo lefatsheng leo la bona. Kamano ya baanelwa e tla tlhokomelwa fa go buiwa ka botlhokwa jwa bona. Baanelwa botlhe ba

botlhokwa fela go na le baanelwabagolo le baanelwabannye. Baanelwabagolo ke moganediwa le moganetsi ba ba laolwang ke setlhogo.

2.3.2. Moganediwa motho yo o pelontle ‘Kind-hearted person’.

Malimabe (1998:6) o mo tthalosa e le moanelwa yo mogolo yo o ganediwang mo go siameng ga gagwe. Mojalefa (1996:6) a tsweledisa kgopolo e pele, fa a re ke moanelwa yo mogolo, yo bogolo jwa ditiragalo tsa sekwalwa di buang ka ga ene. Moanelwa yo mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise* ke Motlalepule. Jaanong go tla lebelelwa boganediwa jwa ga Motlalepule.

Motlalepule, mosetsana wa Maikutlwane, o goroga kwa Gouteng ka setimela. O siame, o na le maitsholo a mantle e bile babuisi ba a mo rata. Thandi o simolola go fufegela Motlalepule gonne a le montle go mo gaisa. O mo logela maano a go senya bontle jwa gagwe. O dira mogodungwana, mme o o tshela sengwe se se nang le monko. Thandi o biletsa Motlalepule ka fa phaposing ya gagwe. Motlalepule o fitlhela mosimane wa tedu tsa katse, a dutse ka fa phaposing eo.

O fiwa mogodungwana o o nang le monko, mme o a o nwa. Morago Motlalepule o tshwarwa ke boroko. Mosimane wa tedu tsa katse o a mmetelega. O dira se gonne Motlalepule a idibaditswe.

Maikalelo a ga Thandi a go senyetsa Motlalepule bontle a a diragala. Motlalepule o ima mpa ya ngwana wa dikgora. Tiro e a fela ka ntlha ya mpa. O ya go nna le mosadimogolo MmaSebolai. O fiwa ngwana

wa mosimane, mme o mmaya letshwao ka fa morago ga tsebe ya moja. Ba tsaya ngwana ba mo isa kwa ntlokgodisetsong ya bana. Ngwana yo, o itseelwa ke morwadia Ofentse, kwa ntlokgodisetsong. O mo isa kwa Matile gaufi le Maikutlwane. Motlalepule o nyalwa ke mosimane wa Thaba-Ntsho, mme o ikaelela go fitlha sephiri sa gore o na le ngwana wa dikgora. Motlalepule o fitlha sephiri gonne a boifa gore lelapa la gagwe le tla thubega. Morago o fiwa ngwana wa mosetsana o bitswa Mosidi. Motlalepule o simolola go batla morwa wa gagwe mo sephiring.

Makoa a ga Motlalepule a go fitlha sephiri le go batlela ngwana mo sephiring, a utlwise mmuisi botlhoko gonne se se mo diragaletseng le ene se ka mo diragalela. Motlalepule o tswelala pele ka tshiamo ya gagwe. Ga a fetoge. Fa a batla ngwana mmuisi o a mmatlisa gonne o a mo rata. O simololwa ke bolwetse jwa pelo jo bo tlhotsweng ke go batla ngwana mo sephiring. Mmuisi o mo utlwela botlhoko gonne o tlhagetswe ke kotsi e e ka tlhagelang mang le mang.

2.3.3. Moganetsi motho wa dikgotlhang, yo o lotlhanyang 'quarrel-some person'

Mojalefa (1996:6) o tlhalosa gore moganetsi ke moanelwa yo mogolo yo o lebaganeng le go se siame ka gonne o lwa le moanelwa yo babuisi ba mo ratang. Ke go re o ganetsana le ditiro tse dintle tsa moganediwa.

Mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise*, Mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse ke ene moganetsi. O tlhoa Motlalepule gonne a ganne go mo rata. O lemogile

gore Motlalepule o montle go gaisa basetsana ba bangwe. Seno se tlhola lefufa. O ikaelela go mo senyetsa botshelo. Mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse o bitsa Thandi go mo thusa tiro e ya go senyetsa Motlalepule botshelo. O dira mogodungwana, mme o o tshela sengwe se se nang le monko. Thandi o biletsa Motlalepule ka fa phaposing ya gagwe. Motlalepule o goduma mogodungwana o a fitlhetseng o ntse o dirilwe, o o nang le monko. Morago ga go o nwa o tshwarwa ke boroko. Mosimane wa tedu tsa katse o robala le ene, mme o mo naya mpa ya dikgora. Bontle jwa ga Motlalepule bo a senyega. Tiro e a fela o simolola go sotlega. Maikaelelo a ga mosimane wa tedu tsa katse a a diragala.

2.3.4. Kamano ya baanelwabagolo le baanelwabannye

Fa go sekasekiwa kamano fa gare ga baanelwabagolo le baanelwabannye go ya go dirisiwa lenaneo le le tlhalosiwang ke Groenewald (1993:11) le Mojalefa (1997:19) ka tsela e:

- Tebagano '*oogmerk*' '*in tension*'
- Bokgontshi '*begunstiging*' '*patronage*'
- Bothusi '*hulp*' '*assistance*'
- Boganetsi '*teenstand*' '*resistance*'
- Bothusegi '*begunstige*' '*patronised*'

Patlisiso e ya go tlhalosa mareo a pele.

- **Tebagano**

Mojalefa (1995:7) o tthalosa gore tebagano ke fa go lebagannngwa moganediwa le moganetsi. Tebagano e tthalosa maikaelelo a moganediwa le moganetsi go fitlhelela katlego tsa bona. Tebagano ya moganetsi e nna kgatthanong le ya moganediwa.

○ **Tebagano ya ga Motlalepule**

Go ikaelela go fitlha sephiri sa ngwana wa dikgora, go boloka lenyalo la gagwe.

Mogamediwa: Motlalepule

Motlalepule o montle e bile o maitseo. Mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse o fufegela bontle jo, gonne a mo ganne. O ikaelela go mo senyetsa botshelo. Tsala ya mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse o dira mogodungwana, mme o o tshela sengwe se se nang le monko. Thandi o biletsa Motlalepule ka fa phaposing ya gagwe. Motlalepule o tsena ka fa gare, mme o goduma mogodungwana o a fitlhetseng o ntse o tshetswe. O mo tshwarisa boroko. Mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse o robala le ena. Motlalepule o fiwa mpa ya dikgora. Morago o belega ngwana wa mosimane yo a sa itseng rraagwe. Motlalepule o tsena mo mathateng. Ga a sa dira. Ga a na madi a go godisa ngwana. O tshaba go ya gae ka ngwana wa dikgora. O nna le mosadimogolo mmaSebolai. Ba tsaya ngwana ba mo isa ntlokgodisetsong ya bana. Morago Motlalepule o bona tiro. O a nyalwa. Ga a bolelele monna wa gagwe gore o na le ngwana wa mosimane. O boifa gore monna a ka se

tlhole a mo tshepa, mme lapa la gagwe la thubega. O ikaelela go tshwara sephiri botshelo jotle jwa gagwe. O batlela ngwana yo mo sephiring. O simolola go lwala bolwetse jwa pelo ka ntlha ya sephiri seo fela ga a bue.

- **Bokgontshi : Lerato**

Go ya ka Malimabe (1998:30) bokgontshi ke selo se se kgontshang kgotsa se se tlhotlheletsang moanelwa go lwela seo e leng nepo ya gagwe. Mojalefa (1995:7) o tlaleletsa se ka go re:

*Bo lebane le senaganwa (lerato, lehloyo,
kwelobotlhoko, bobotse, bodiidi, bohumi,
megabaru, bošula, bjalobjalo.)*

Bokgontshi bo lebagane le se moanelwa a se naganang, e seng se a se bonang ka matlho.

Mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise*, Motlalepule (mogamediwa) o ikaelela go fitlha sephiri sa ngwana wa dikgora. O na le letshogo la gore fa monna wa gagwe a ka itse, o tla mo tlhala, mme a simolola go bogisega gape. Letshogo leo le mo kgontsha go fitlha sephiri gonne a gopola gore fa se ka itsiwe, a ka boela mo kutlobothong ya go tlhoka monna le bonno.

- **Bothusi.**

Mojalefa (1995:7) a re bothusi ke sengwe le sengwe se se thusang moganediwa mo maikemisetso a gagwe. Fa a tswelala pele o bua gore bothusi bo lebagane le (a) seakanngwa (b) motho le (c) sengwe le sengwe se o ka kgonang go se bona ka matlho jaaka mo pading e, mogodungwana, selepe, lerumo, jalo le jalo. Ka jalo, bothusi jwa Motlalepule ke:

- Seakanngwa: Katlego ya lenyalo.
- Batho: MmaSebolai
Baoki
- Dilo: Legae la ga MmaSebolai
Ntlokgodisetso
- **Seakanngwa: Katlego ya lenyalo**

Motlalepule o tshela botshelo jo bo boima kwa Gouteng. O welwa ke mathata a go ima ngwana a sa itse rraagwe. O tlhoka dijo le diaparo, e bile o palelwa ke go tlamela le ene ngwana yo. O thusiwa ke mosadimogolo MmaSebolai. Morago ba lemoga gore ba ka bona thuso kwa ntlokgodisetsong ya bana. Ba isa ngwana teng gore Motlalepule a kgone go dira. O bona tiro, mme morago o a nyalwa. Ba tshegofatswa ka ngwana wa mosetsana. Motlalepule o simolola go atlega. O bona boitumelo jo a sa bolong go bo tlhoka. O simolola go gopola morwae wa dikgora. O boifa go ntsha sephiri a ise a bone ngwana. O tshaba le go se tlhagisa gonne a na le poifo ya gore lenyalo la gagwe le ka senyega. Ka tsela e, o lemosa monna wa gagwe botlhokwa jwa go nna le ngwana wa mosimane. O ikaelela go batlela morwae mo sephiring. O kopa monna wa gagwe gore ba ye kwa ntlokgodisetsong go ya go

batla morwa. Ga a ntshe sephiri, maikaelelo ke gore a se thube lelapa la gagwe.

- **Batho: MmaSebolai, baoki, Mosidi le MmaModise**

- **MmaSebolai**

Motlalepule fa a imile ngwana wa dikgora o ne a senyegelwa ke tiro. A tlhoka bodulo. O amogelwa ke mosadimogolo MmaSebolai. Mosadimogolo yo o utlwela Motlalepule botlhoko. O nna le ene mo mathateng a a kalo, a go tlhoka madi le go ima mpa a sa itse rraagwe ngwana. MmaSebolai o nna mothusi yo mogolo wa ga Motlalepule. O mo naya lorato lwa batsadi go fitlha a tshola ngwana. O mo naya leina la Omphile. Mosadimogolo le Motlalepule ba tsaya ngwana ba mo isa kwa ntlokgodisetsong gore a kgone go bona tlhokomelo e e tshwanetseng.

- **Baoki**

Mosadimogolo MmaSebolai le Motlalepule ba fitlha kwa ntlokgodisetsong ya bana. Teng ba amogelwa ke baoki. Baoki bao, ba bua le Motlalepule. Ba amogela mathata a gagwe a go tshola ngwana wa dikgora. Ba tsaya ngwana wa ga Motlalepule, mme ba mo godisa jaaka wa bona. Ka jalo, ba mo rola mokgweleo. Ngwana o sala kwa ntlokgodisetsong. Baoki ba thusa Motlalepule go mo godisetsa ngwana ka tsela e e siameng. Motlalepule o kgona go batla tiro, mme morago ga foo, o a nyalwa.

▪ **Mosidi**

Mosimane wa Thaba-Ntsho o nyala Motlalepule. Ba tshegofatswa ka ngwana wa mosetsana. Ba mo naya leina la Mosidi. Fa Motlalepule a sena go belega ngwana wa mosetsana, o simolola go gopola morwae wa dikgora. Ga a bolelele monna wa gagwe gore o na le ngwana wa mosimane. Fa a ka bo a belege ngwana wa mosimane, e seng wa mosetsana, o ne a ka se itse le go kopa monna gore ba ye go batla ngwana wa mosimane. RraMosidi o dumelana le ene, mme ba ya kwa ntlokgodisetsong go ya go itseela ngwana wa mosimane. Seno e nna bothusi mo go Motlalepule, gonne o bona tšhono ya go ya go batla morwae kwa ntlokgodisetsong.

▪ **MmaModise**

Monnamogolo Ofentse o kopa morwadie go mo thusa ka modisa wa dikgomo. Ka morwa wa gagwe a se na bana, o ya kwa ntlokgodisetsong go ya go iponela a le mongwe teng. O ba keleka botlhe, mme morago o tlohpha Omphile morwa wa ga Motlalepule. Morwadia monna-mogolo Ofentse, o tsaya ngwana o mo isa Matile gore a kgone go thusa rraagwe ka go disa. O tewa leina la Modise. MmaModise o thusitse a tsaya Omphile, e leng, Modise go mo isa kwa Matile, gaufi le Maikutlwane gaabo Motlalepule e bile kwa bokhutlong Motlalepule o kopana le morwae.

- **Dilo: Kwa ga MmaSebolai, ntlokgodisetso le kwa ga monnamogolo Ofentse**

○ **Kwa ga MmaSebolai**

Mosadimogolo MmaSebolai o kutlwelobotlhoko. O amogela Motlalepule a imile. O nna le ene gore a be a thusege. O naya Motlalepule le morwae wa dikgora bonno, go fitlhela Motlalepule a bona thuso. Legae la gagwe le thusitse Motlalepule thata, mo tlalelong ya gagwe. Ke lona legae la ntlha la thuso.

○ **Ntlokgodisetso ya bana**

Motlalepule o nna le morwa wa gagwe kwa ga mosadimogolo MmaSebolai go fitlhela lesea le gola. Tlala le bodidi di gapeletsa Motlalepule go tsaya ngwana go mo isa kwa ntlokgodisetsong. Ntlokgodisetso e thusa Motlalepule go tshola ngwana wa gagwe a bolokesebile e bile e mo tlamela ka dilo tsothle. E boloka sephiri sa gore Motlalepule o na le ngwana wa dikgora. O kgona go batla tiro, mme morago o a nyalwa.

○ **Kwa ga monnamogolo Ofentse**

Monnamogolo Ofentse kwa Matile o tlhoka ngwana yo o mo thusang go disa. O kopa morwadie yo o dirang kwa Gouteng go mo thusa ka modisa. Morwadie ga a na bana. Monnamogolo o kopa thuso mo go ene gore a iponele modisa felo gongwe. Morwadia wa ga Ofentse o ya kwa ntlokgodisetsong go ya go itlhophela a le mongwe. O kgatlhwa ke Omphile morwa wa ga Motlalepule. O itseela ene go ya go mo ikgodisetsa. Morwa yo o tewa leina la Modise. O ya go nna kwa Matile le monnamogolo Ofentse. Legae le, le thusa go tlhokomela

ngwana wa ga Motlalepule. O tlisitswe fa gae, e leng, kwa gaabo Motlalepule.

- **Boganetsi**

Go ya ka Mojalefa (1997:20) boganetsi bo lebagane le sengwe seo moganediwa kgotsa moganetsi a ka thulanang le sona. Fa a tswelala pele o re bo lebagane le (a) seakanngwa (b) motho (c) le selo se se ka mo thibelang go diragatsa morero wa gagwe.

- **Diakanngwa: Letshogo le bolwetse**

- **Letshogo**

Motlalepule ga a itse gore a tlhalosetse monna wa gagwe ka morwae wa dikgora jang, mme se se mo tshwenyang go feta ke gore ga itse kwa a leng kwa teng. Selo se, se mo tlholela letshogo mo maikutlong a gagwe. Ga a sa na boiketlo. Fa a simolola go bona bana ba basimane ba dingwaga tsa Omphile, o ba keleka ka fa morago ga ditsebe. Bana ba simolola go mmoifa. E nna sephiri se se mo jang. Monna ga a itse sepe. O bona mosadi a ota. Motlalepule o otisiwa ke go boifa go bolelela monna gore o belege ngwana wa dikgora ka tsela e e ntseng jang. O gopola gore monna o tlile go mo tsaya jaaka motho yo a sa tshepegaleng. O boifa gore batho ba tla mo tsaya jang, ka go latlha ngwana. Basadi ka setso ba kgona go belega bana ba dikgora fela ga ba ba latlhe. Jaaanong o simolola go inyatsa ka go tlhoka botshepegi ga gagwe.

- **Bolwetse**

Motlalepule fa a fitlha sephiri sa gore o na le ngwana wa dikgora o simolola go lwala. Go ratharatha mo go mo tlolela bolwetse jwa pelo. O tsenwa ke bolwetse jwa madi a magolo. Bolwetse jo bo mo sitisa botshelo.

- **Batho: RraMosidi le baoki**

- **RraMosidi**

Monna wa ga Motlalepule, RraMosidi, ga a itse sephiri sa ga Motlalepule. Motlalepule o gopola gore fa a ka tlhagisa sephiri se, monna o ile go mo tlhala. Ka jalo, monna o thulana le morero wa gagwe wa go tlhagisa sephiri.

- **Baoki**

Motlalepule fa a isa ngwana wa gagwe kwa ntlokgodisetsong, o fitlhela baoki. Baoki bao, morago ba tloswa fa lefelong leo, ba isiwa go le lengwe. Go tla baoki ba bašwa ba ba sa itseng sepe ka ga Motlalepule le morwa wa gagwe. Motlalepule o ikaelela go batla ngwana wa gagwe gore a tle go mo ikgodisetsa, ka a bone legae. Fa a fitlha kwa ntlokgodisetsong, morwa wa gagwe ga a teng. Go nna le mathata gonne ngwana o tlositswe mo ntlokgodisetsong. E nna sephiri sa nnete ka ntlha ya gore le ene mmaagwe ga a itse kwa ngwana a leng kwa teng. Ga a ise gope sephiri sa go fitlhela monna ka ngwana wa gagwe. O mo tlalelong e kgolo.

- **Selo: Ntlokgodisetso**

Go tthalositswe gore ntlokgodisetso ke lefelo le le lebaganeng le bothusi: ka gonne ngwana wa ga Motlalepule o bona thuso mo go yona. Gape lefelo leo ke foo ngwana wa ga Motlalepule a timelelang teng. Ka jalo, lefelo leo le tlile go tthalosiwa gape.

Lefelo le, e ne e le bothusi ka go tlhokomela ngwana wa ga Motlalepule ka nako eo mmaagwe a neng a le mo tlalelong. Le mo tlametse ka go mo naya bonno, dijo, diaparo le batsadi, e leng, baoki. Jaanong ka gore le timeditse ngwana yo, ga e sa tihole e le lefelo la go thusa ka gonne le fetoga la go ganetsa. Morwadia monnamogolo Ofentse o tla mo ntlokgodisetsong ya bana, go tla go itlhophela ngwana yo o tla thusang monna-mogolo go disa. O itseela ngwana wa ga Motlalepule, Omphile, go ya go mo godisa. Se, se dira gore motlhala wa ga Omphile o timelele. O timelela le mmaagwe, e leng, Motlalepule. Ka jalo, ntlokgodisetso e nna boganetsi jwa go fitlhelela maikaelelo a ga Motlalepule.

- **Bothusegi**

Mojalefa (1997:22) o tthalosa bothusegi ka go re bo lebagane le moganediwa kgotsa moganetsi yo kwa bokhutlong a tlileng go atlega kgotsa go kgona ka ntlha ya phisegelo ya gagwe.

Motlalepule ga a thusega. Sephiri se mo tliseditse bolwetse jwa pelo. Botshelo jwa gagwe jotlhe ke jo bo tsamaelanang le sephiri. Le fa a

bone ngwana kwa bokhutlong, ga go na mosola ka gonne o bona ngwana a setse a tlhokafala.

○ **Moganetsi: Mosimane yo o 'tedu tsa katse /Tedutsebeng**

● **Tebagano: Go senyetsa Motlalepule botshelo**

Mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse o senyetsa Motlalepule botshelo. O rata Motlalepule ka a le montle go gaisa basetsana ba bangwe. Motlalepule ene ga a mo rate. Ka jalo, o ikaelela go mo senyetsa botshelo gonne a le pelompe. Ke mmolai yo o setlhogo. Maikaelelo a gagwe a atlega gonne kwa bokhutlong o tsenya Motlalepule mo mathateng a go nna le sephiri se se mo tlhokisang boitumelo go isa losong. Tebagano e e bosula e, o e fitlheletse gonne kwa bokhutlong Motlalepule o tsene mo mathateng a go tshwara sephiri botshelo jotlhe jwa gagwe. Ke sona se mmolaileng.

● **Bokgontshi: Letlhoo**

Mosimane yo o 'tedu tsa katse o rata Motlalepule gonne a le montle. Le batho ba a mo rata, gonne a siame. Seno se tlhola letlhoo la kilo mo go mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse gonne Motlalepule a mo ganne. Ka letlhoo le, o ikaelela go mo senyetsa botshelo. Ka jalo, letlhoo ke bokgontshi jwa ga mosimane yo o 'tedu tsa katse go fitlhelela maikaelelo a a maswe ao.

- **Bothusi**

Bothusi jwa mosimane yo o 'tedu tsa katse ke:

- Diakanngwa: Setshego, boroko le setlhare mo mogodungwaneng.
- Motho: Thandi
- **Setshego**

Mosimane yo o 'tedu tsa katse o simolola go tlhoa Motlalepule thata. Letlhoo le, ga le sa fitlhega. Motlalepule o mo lemogile e bile o simolola go mo tshaba. Mosimane yo o 'tedu tsa katse o mo logela maano a a popota. O rulaganya le Thandi gore ba biletse Motlalepule ka fa phaposing ya ga Thandi ka setshego se se robang ditokololo tsa mmele. Ka setshego se, Motlalepule o a itebala, e bile o dumela go tsena mo phaposing ya ga Thandi. Setshego ke kgogedi e kgolo e e thusitseng mosimane yo o 'tedu tsa katse go diragatsa maikaelelo a gagwe.

- **Boroko**

Motlalepule fa a tsena ka fa phaposing ya ga Thandi o fitlhela go dirilwe mogodungwana. Mogodungwana o o tshetswe setlhare se se neng sa mo taga, fa a fetsa go o nwa. A tshwarwa ke boroko. Monna wa 'tedu tsa katse a robala le ene.

- **Motho: Thandi**

Mosimane yo o 'tedu tsa katse o itsalanya le Thandi, ka a dira le Motlalepule. O dirisa Thandi gore a biletse Motlalepule ka fa phaposing ya gagwe. Fa Motlalepule a tsena ka fa phaposing e ya ga Thandi o fitlhela go dutse mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse. Motlalepule o itewa ke letshogo, fela Thandi o mo tthalosetsa gore ke kgaitsadie. Mosimane yo o 'tedu tsa katse o itira yo o bonolo jwa kwana a ntse a tshega. O dira gore maano a gagwe a kgonege. Motlalepule o nwa mogodungwana o o nang le setlhare. Setlhare se, se mo tshwarisa boroko. Mosimane yo o 'tedu tsa katse o a mmetelega. A ima ngwana wa dikgora. Thandi o thusitse mosimane yo o 'tedu tsa katse go senyetsa Motlalepule botshelo. Motlalepule o latlhegelwa ke tiro. O tlhoka le moo a ka nnang teng.

- **Dilo: Phaposi ya ga Thandi le setlhare ka fa mogodungwaneng**

- **Phaposi ya ga Thandi**

Mosimane yo o 'tedu tsa katse o biletse Motlalepule ka fa phaposing ya Thandi. O baakantse mogodungwana a o tshetse setlhare se se nang le monko. O dirisa Thandi go mo thusa go diragatsa maikaelelo a gagwe. Motlalepule o dumela go tsena ka fa phaposing ya ga Thandi mo go diragalang se se mo tsenyang mo mathateng a botshelo jotlhe jwa gagwe.

- **Setlhare ka fa mogodungwaneng**

Mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse o tshela Motlalepule mogodungwana o tshetswe setlhare se se nang le monko. Le fa Motlalepule a utlwa monko oo, o kgotsofatsa mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse ka go nwa mogodungwana o. Morago o tshwarwa ke boroko, mme mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse o robala le ene.

- **Boganetsi**

Boganetsi jwa ga mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse ke:

- Batho: MmaSebolai le baoki
- Seakanngwa: Lenyalo
- Selo: Ntlokgodisetso

- **Batho:**

- **MmaSebolai**

Mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse o ikaeletse go utlwiswa Motlalepule botlhoko botshelo jotlhe jwa gagwe. Ga a ikaelela go mmona a tswela pele. Le fa a mo utlwisitse botlhoko ka go mo imisa mpa ya dikgora, o thusiwa ke mosadimogolo MmaSebolai. Mosadimogolo MmaSebolai o amogela Motlalepule le morwae wa dikgora. O ba naya bonno go fitlhela Motlalepule a isa ngwana kwa ntlokgodisetsong ya

bana. Mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse mo gongwe o ne a utlwa botlhoko ka thuso e Motlalepule a e boneng.

○ **Baoki**

Kwa ntlokgodisetsong ya bana go na le baoki ba ba thusang Motlalepule ka go amogela ngwana wa gagwe. Ba tsaya ngwana yo ba a mo tlhokomela. Ba mo tlamela ka sengwe le sengwe se se tshwanetseng ngwana mongwe le mongwe. Mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse gongwe o utlwile botlhoko thata ka gonne a ne a batla go bona ngwana yo a sotlega. O ne a batla go mmona a se na batho ba ba mo thusang ena le mmaagwe. Baoki ba, ka ntlha ya go thusa Motlalepule ba ganetsana le maikaelelo a ga mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse.

○ **Seakanngwa: Lenyalo**

Mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse o ne a ikaeletse go utlwiswa Motlalepule botlhoko botshelo jotlhe jwa gagwe gore a se nyalwe. O mo naya mpa ya dikgora ka maikaelelo a gore go se nne le monna yo o mo kgatlhegelang. Ka lesego Motlalepule o a nyalwa. Lenyalo e nna sekgoreletsi sa maikaelelo a ga mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse.

• **Selo: Ntlokgodisetso ya bana**

Mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse o senyetsa Motlalepule ka go mmetelela, mme a mo imisa mpa ya dikgora. Motlalepule o belega ngwana wa mosimane. Ba tlhoka mo ba ka robalang teng. O ikaelela go ba bona ba sotlega ena le ngwana. Motlalepule o tsaya ngwana o mo isa kwa

ntlologodisetsong ya bana. Kwa ntlologodisetsong ngwana o bona tlhokomelo e e tshwanang le ya ngwana mongwe le mongwe. Ka tsela e, ntlologodisetso e nna boganetsi mo go mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse.

2.4. TSHOSOBANYO

Tebagano le bokgontshi jwa moganediwa di lebagane le boganetsi jwa moganetsi, mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse, e leng, go senyetsa Motlalepule botshelo, e kgatlhanong le tebagano ya ga moganediwa, Motlalepule, e leng, go bogisiwa mo botshelong. Go jalo le mo go bokgontshi: Bokgontshi jwa ga mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse ke go tlhoa Motlalepule gonne a mo ganne. Letlhoo leo le tlhotlheletsa Motlalepule go fitlha sephiri. Gape go tla lemogiwa gore boganetsi jwa ga Motlalepule ke bothusi jwa ga mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse.

2.4.1. Kamano e, ya baanelwa e akarediwa ka setshwantsho se:

Mogamediwa: Motlalepule	Mogamedi: Mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse
-----------------------------------	---

Tebagano

Go fitlha sephiri		Go senya botshelo jwa Motlalepule
-------------------	--	-----------------------------------

Bokgontshi

Letshogo: O boifa go ntsha sephiri ka gore monna a ka mo tlhala.		Letlhoo: O tlhoela Motlalepule bontle jwa gagwe gonne a mo ganne.
---	--	--

Bothusi

Seakanngwa: Lenyalo		Seakanngwa: Monko le
---------------------	--	-----------------------------



		setshego di dira kgogedi mo go Motlalepule gore a iphitlhele a le ka fa phaposing ya ga Thandi.
Batho: MmaSebolai Mosidi MmaModise Baoki Malebela		Motho: Mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse.
Selo: Ntlokgodisetso ya bana e nna bonno le tlamelo ya Omphile.		Selo: Phaposi ya ga Thandi. Mogodungwana.

Boganetsi

Seakanngwa: Letshogo Monko Setshego Bolwetsi.		Seakanngwa: Lenyalo.
Batho: Mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse. Baoki ba ba fileng morwadia Ofentse Omphile.		Batho: MmaSebolai. Mosidi MmaModise Baoki ba ba amogetseng Omphile kwa ntlokgodisetsong.

Selo: Phaposi ya ga Thandi. Mogodungwana.		Selo: Ntlokgodisetso ya bana.

Bothusi

Ga a a thusega gonne o kopana le ngwana a setse a tlhokafala.		O thusegile gonne Motlalepule o sotlwa ke sephiri se a se mo tlholetseng botshelo jotlhe jwa gagwe.
---	--	---

2.5. DITIRAGALO TSA DITENG

Go ya ka Groenewald (1993:10) tatelano ya ditiragalo e tswaledisa maikaelelo a mokwadi pele. Fa Mojalefa (1995:4) a tlaleletsa kgopolo e, a re ditiragalo di diragalela baanelwa. Mokwadi wa setlhangwa se se rileng o anela mo diteng tsa setlhangwa di simologang gone le mo di felelang teng, mme di laolwa ke setlhogo. Ka setlhogo mokwadi o kgona go tlhopha ditiragalo tse a batlang go di tlhalosa. Ke gore setlhogo ke pinagare ya ntlha go lemosa mmuisi ditiragalo. Jaanong go tla tlhokomelwa mefuta ya ditiragalo.

2.5.1. Mefuta ya ditiragalo

- (a) Go ya ka Lekganyane (1997:28) ditiragalo di arogantswe ka dikarolo tse tharo e leng: (a) ditiragalotshwanelo, (b) ditiragalotebagano le (c) ditiragalotlaleletso

Lebaka (1999:66) ena o tlohpha ditiragalo ka mefuta e mebedi e leng:
(a) ditiragalotshwanelo le (b) ditiragalo (ka botsona)

Patlisiso e ya go sala morago tlhopho ya ditiragalo ya ga Lekganyane ka gonne e lebagane le tlhopho e e jalo.

2.5.2. Ditiragalotshwanelo

Mojalefa (1994:4) o tthalosa gore ditiragalotshwanelo ke e nngwe ya ditiragalo tse dikgolo tsa go bopa sekwalwa. O tswelela pele ka go tlohpha ditiragalo tseo tsa sekwalwa ka dikarolo tse tharo tse di bitswang tiragalotshwanelo ya ntlha, tiragalotshwanelo ya gare le tiragalotshwanelo ya bofelo. Ditiragalo tsona tseo tse tharo, di laolwa ke setlhogo le baanelwabagolo e leng moganediwa le moganetsi mmogo le tikologo.

Go tlile go tlhokomelwa ditiragalotshwanelo tsa ga *Omphile Umphi Modise*. Padi e e tlhophilwe ka ditiragalotshwanelo tse tharo e leng:

- (a) Tiragalotshwanelo ya ntlha: Loeto go ya Gouteng.
- (b) Tiragalotshwanelo ya gare: Mathata.
- (c) Tiragalotshwanelo ya bofelo: Matlhotlhapelo.

2.5.3. Ditiragalo ka botsona

Go ya ka Mojalefa (1994:4) ditiragalo ka botsona di lebagane le ditiragalo tse dinnye tse di bopang tiragalotshwanelo. Fa go ya go sekasekiwa padi e, go ya go tlhokomelwa ditiragalo tse dinnye tse di

bopang tiragalotshwanelo ya ntlha, ya gare le ya bofelo. Jaanong go latela ditiragalo tse di akareditsweng go ya ka mefuta e meraro e.

- **Loeto go ya Gouteng**

Motlalepule o tloga Maikutlwane go ya Gouteng ka setimela. Fa a goroga, o kopana le mosimane yo o tedutsebeng, mo seteišeneng. Mosimane yo o usa sekgwama ka bomo. O dira e kete ga a se bone. Maikaelelo a go se usa ke go ngoka Motlalepule gore a se nope. Motlalepule ga a se nope. Ka jalo mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o mmolela gore o se tlogela ka ntlha ya gore o sa kgotshe ting ya kwa gae.

O bitsa Motlalepule 'Maria', mme morago o mmita ka leina la nnete. Motlalepule o simolola go mo tshwantshanya le mosimane wa legwaragwara wa ga rremogolo Sentshoge. Ga a na bonnete ka gore yoo o tedu tsa katse mme yo o tedutsebeng. Morago ga go kgaogana le mosimane yo o amogelwa ke basetsana ba Lakasanta, gonne ga a itse ope mo Gouteng. Basetsana ba ba simolola go mo fufegela. Motlalepule o fudugela kwa difoleteng moo a kopanang le Thandi. Thandi o fufegela Motlalepule bontle jwa gagwe. Motlalepule o lemoga gore Thandi ga a mo rate. Thandi o rulaganya le mosimane yo o tedutsebeng gore a senyetse Motlalepule bontle. Ba mmiletsa ka fa phaposing ya ga Thandi. Motlalepule o nwa mogodungwana o o tshetsweng seritibatsi. O a robala. Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o a mmetelega. O ima ngwana wa dikgora. Morago ga foo o tlogela tiro o ya go MmaSebolai. O belega ngwana, o mo isa kwa ntlokgodisetsong. Motlalepule o bona tiro. O nyalwa ke mosimane wa Thaba Ntsho. Ba

tshegofatswa ka mosetsana, Mosidi. Loeto lo tswelela pele ka go batla ngwana wa mosimane, Omphile, go fitlha a tlhokofala.

- **Mathata a loeto lwa ga Motlalepule**

Mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse ga a tlogele Motlalepule gonne a mo ganne. O batla go mo senyetsa botshelo. O mo direla mogodungwana o o tshela setlhare se se nang le monko. Mosimane yo o dirisa Thandi go ngoka Motlalepule ka setshego go tsena ka fa phaposing ya gagwe. Motlalepule o a itse gore mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse le Thandi ga ba mo rate, fela o dumela go tsena ka fa phaposing ya ga Thandi. O fitlha a nwa mogodungwana o a fitlhetseng o ntse o dirilwe. Morago ga go o nwa o tsharwa ke boroko. Mosimane wa tedu tsa katse o betelela Motlalepule. Motlalepule o a ima mme o belega ngwana wa dikgora. O mmaya letshwao ka fa morago ga tsebe ya moja. Ka ntlha ya go tlhoka bonno o nna le mosadimogolo mmaSebolai.

Motlalepule o tlhoka dijo le tlanelo ya ngwana. Ke ka tsela eo a tsayang morwa wa gagwe Omphile a mo isang kwa ntlokgodisetsong ya bana. Teng ngwana o fitlhela tlanelo e e siameng. Motlalepule o bona tiro. Morago o ratana le mosimane wa Thaba Ntsho mme o a mo nyala. Ba tshegofatswa ka ngwana wa mosetsana, Mosidi. Motlalepule o simolola go gopola morwa wa gagwe wa dikgora mme o boifa go bolela RraMosidi sephiri seo. O kopa RraMosidi go re ba ye go batla mosimane kwa ntlokgodisetsong ya bana. MmaMosidi ga a mmolelela gore o batla morwa wa gagwe. Kwa ntlokgodisetsong MmaMosidi o fitlhela Omphile morwa wa gagwe a se teng. O setse a tserwe ke morwadia monnamogolo Ofentse. Motlalepula o simolola go

golelwa ke sephiri seo gonne le ene ga a itse kwa ngwana a leng kwa teng. Sephiri se mo tlolela bolwetsi jwa pelo. Bolwetse jo bo a gola, mme o boela kwa gae kwa Maikutlwane ka ntlha ya bona. Teng o kopana le Omphile yo o bitswang Modise. Ka ntlha ya lotshwao lo a mmeileng mo morago ga tsebe ya moja Motlalepule o kgona go itse morwa wa gagwe. O mmita ka leina la Omphile, le Modise a sa le itseng. Morago ga foo o a tlhokofala.

- **Matlhotlhapelo**

Motlalepule o kwala lekwalo, mme o a le fitlha. Mo go lona o kopa Modimo maitshwarelo gonne o latlhile ngwana. O tlhalosa tiragalo ya gore o tshotse ngwana yo jang. O kwadile leina la morwa wa gagwe Omphile leo a mo neileng lona fa a sena go mo tshola. Ka ntlha ya go tlhoka dijo bonno le tlamelo eo e tshwanetseng ngwana mongwe le mongwe, Motlalepule o isa ngwana wa gagwe kwa ntlokgodisetsong. Morago ga foo ngwana yo o a mo timelela. Seno se mo tlolela matlhotlhapelo botshelo jotlhe jwa gagwe go fitlhela a bona ngwana wa gagwe ka nako ya fa a tlhokafala.

RraMosidi le Omphile ba fitlhela lekwalo le, mme ba simolola go utlwa sephiri se sa ga Motlalepule sa gore leina la nnete la Modise ke Omphile.

Jaanong go tla tlhokomelwa phetogo ya ditiragalo tsa padi e.

- **Phetogo**

Go ya ka Lebaka (1999:47) fa go sekasekiwa ditiragalo ka botsona go lemogilwe fa pinagare ya ditiragalo e le phetogo. Phetogo e tlhagelela fa go fetoga dielemente tsa moanelwa, nako le felo. Go kgethilwe ditiragalo tse, go tlhokomela phetogo ya tsona, go ya ka fao di latelanang ka teng. Go ya go simololwa ka go tlhokomelwa phetogo ya ditiragalo tse:

- 1. Go goroga ga Motlalepule**

- 2. Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o tla fa go ene**

Tiragalo ya go goroga ga Motlalepule mo Gouteng e fetolwa ke fa go tsena moanelwa yo mongwe, e leng, mosimane yo o tedutsebeng. Ka jalo, ga e sale tiragalo eo ya ntlha. Jaanong go na le baanelwa ba babedi, morago ga go goroga ga mosimane yo o tedutsebeng.

- 3. Tigelo ya sekgwama fa fatshe, ke mosimane yo o tedutsebeng**

- 4. Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o a tsamaya**

Mo tiragalong e, ya fa mosimane yo o tedutsebeng a le gaufi le Motlalepule, go bonala baanelwa ba babedi, nako e le nngwe le lefelong le le lengwe. Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o diga sekgwama o a tsamaya. O ya felong gongwe. Seno se tlisa phetogo ya tiragalo ka gone baanelwa ba arogane. Motlalepule o eme gona foo. Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o a tsamaya. O fetola nako le felo. Nako e a neng a

eme le Motlalepule e a fetoga fa a tsamaya. O goroga kwa felong gongwe ka nako e nngwe.

5. Tebelelo le keletso ya sekgwama ke Motlalepule

6. Mosimane o boa a tabogile

Tiragalo e, ya go lebelela le go eletsa sekgwama ga Motlalepule, go tlisa phetogo. Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o tloga mo a neng a ile teng. O fetola lefelo. O boela kwa go Motlalepule. Go na le phetogo ya baanelwa, nako le felo. Baanelwa e nna ba babedi, felong go le gongwe. Nako ya fa a goroga fa go Motlalepule, le yona ke e nngwe.

2.5.4. Tshosobanyo

Go tla tlhokomelwa gore ditiragalo di arogantswe ka dikarolo tse pedi, e leng, mefuta ya ditiragalo le ditiragalo ka botsona. Tiragalotshwanelo ya ga *Omphile Umphi Modise* e arogantswe ka dikarolwana di le tharo, e leng: tiragalotshwanelo ya ntlha: loeto go ya Gouteng, ya fa gare: mathata a ga Motlalepule le ya bofelo: matlhotlhapelo a wela Motlalepule.

Ditiragalo ka botsona di tlhalosa ditiragalo tse dinnye tse di bopang tiragalotshwanelo.

Patlisiso e lemogile gore ditiragalo ka botsona di a fetoga. Phetogo ya ditiragalo e tlisiwa ke dielemente tse tharo tsa diteng, e leng, baanelwa, nako le felo.

2.6. TIKOLOGO

Serudu le ba bangwe (1990: 83) ba tlhalosa tikologo gore ke lefelo leo ditiragalo tsa padi di diragalang mo go lona. Potter (1967: 27) o gatelela seno ka gore tikologo e na le dikarolo di le pedi, e leng: (a) nako le (b) lefelo.

Patlisiso e tla dirisa kgopolo ya ga Potter. Tikologo e tla sekasekiwa go tlhokometswe dikarolo tsa yona tse pedi, e leng: nako le lefelo. Go tla simololwa ka nako.

2.6.1. Nako

Mojalefa (1993: 64) o tlhalosa tiro ya nako ka gore ke lebaka leo ditiragalo di diragalang ka lona, ka go latelana go tloga nako e e fetileng, go ya nakong ya jaanong go fetela nakong e e tlang. O tswelala pele ka go re ke go elatlhoko dipaka tsa motsotso, diura, dibeke, dikgwedi, dingwaga, jalo jalo. O gatelela gore botlhokwa jwa nako ke go aroganya le go latelanya ditiragalo.

Malimabe (1998: 85) o arogantse nako ka dikarolo tse pedi, e leng, (a) nako e e rileng le (b) nako ya ditiragalo. Magapa (1997: 67) ene o arogantse nako ka dikarolwana tse tharo. Tsona ke (a) nako e e rileng (b) nako ya tsa loago le (c) nako ya ditiragalo. Patlisiso e ya go dirisa tsela ya ga Magapa ka go aroganya nako ka dikarolwana di le tharo ka gone ke mokgwa o o lebaganeng le patlisiso e.

2.6.1.1. Nako e e rileng

Malimabe (1998: 37) a re ke nako e e rileng gonne ga e na tshimologo le bokhutlo. Ke nako ya go tshwana le bosigo, motshegare, mariga, selemo jalo jalo. Mojalefa (1993:64) o tswelela pele ka go re bosigo kgotsa motshegare, mariga kgotsa selemo ga di na paka ya go simolola kgotsa ya bokhutlo.

Go tswa mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise* go ya go dirisiwa dikao di se kae tse di latelang, go tlhalosa mofuta o wa nako.

- a) Ke **lotlatlana**. Ba tsamaya ba raletse thota go ya ntlheng ya borwa (ts. 4).
- b) Mmadi, ntsamaisa tsela, ntsala, e tle e re **ka moso** o mpakele (ts. 4).
- c) Mosetsana a ya go ene, a sebaseba nae **ka sebakanyana** (ts. 5).
- d) A mo tlhoka. Morago a ikgomotsa ka gore e tla re go le **tsatsi lengwe**, magodimo a di rebolele go ntsha tlhako ngabeng (ts. 9).
- e) Fa **letlhafula** le tsenye, dikoloi di rwala mmidi, magapu, ntšhwe le maphutshe, di leba Matikiri a Motati (ts. 11).
- f) E ne e le **maitseboa**, go le maru ntlheng ya bophirimatsatsi. Modise le Phatswa ba tsamaela kwa molapong, gore ba tle ba fete kwa mošate, ba bone mekgabiso ya nyalo ya setlogolo sa ga Badirele (ts. 30).

Fa go lebelelwa dikao tse di fa godimo, go tla tlhokomelwa gore dinako tsa tsona ga di lebagane le nako e e lekanngwang. E kete ke dinako tse di akanngwang fela. Ga go itsiwe gore **lotlatlana, ka moso, sebaka se se leele, sebakanyana, tsatsi lengwe, letlhafula le maitseboa**, di simolola ka ura efe, tsa felela ka ura efe. Ke ka ntlha e, go tweng ke nako e e lebaganeng le dinako tsa go akanngwa.

Fa go lebelelwa dikao tse di fa godimo, go tla tlhokomelwa gore dinako tsa tsona ga di a lebagana le nako e e elelang '*measurable*'. E kete ke dinako tse di akanngwang fela. Ga go itsiwe gore: lotlatlana, ka moso, tsatsi lengwe, letlhafula, le maitseboa di simolola leng tsa felela ka ura efe. Ke ka ntlha e go tweng ke nako e e rileng, gonne di lebagane le dinako tsa go akanngwa.

2.6.1.2. Nako ya ditiragalo

Mojalefa (1995:26) o tthalosa nako ya ditiragalo go re ke nako ya go nna le tshimologo le bokhutlo, go tshwana le kgwedi, letsatsi, beke, ura, jalo jalo. Go a itsiwe gore ura e simolola ka motsotso ofe go fitlha ka ofe.

Go tthalosa mofuta o wa nako, go tla ntshiwa dikao di se kae mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise*.

- (a) Motlalepule o ne a ka nna **masome a mabedi a dinyaga le motso**, kgotsa **e mebedi** e seng go feta moo (ts.2).
- (b) Ga feta **dinyaga tse pedi** Motlalepule a nna kwa 275 Lakasanta, a dira mo meseseng mo Doornfontein (ts.2).

- (c) E ne e le **tsatsi la Tshipi, nako e le supa maitseboa**, basetsana, boMotlalepule ba boa kwa ba neng ba tlhotse ba jele nala gone (ts.3).
- (d) E ne e se lefela Thandi a ntse **nyaga tse di tshelentseng** mo Gouteng (ts.3).
- (e) Ka **Matlhatso ka nako ya 10 mosong**, setimela se goroga mo Olanti. Go fologa RraMosidi le MmaMosidi go ya go batla ngwana wa mosimane (ts.7).

Go ya ka dikao tse **masome a mabedi a dinyaga le motso kgotsa e mebedi, tsatsi la Tshipi** le dikao tse dingwe tse di builweng fa godimo, go a itsiwe gore sekao, ngwaga o simolola ka kgwedi efe go fitlha ka efe. Kgwedi e na le dibeke tse kae, le beke gore e simolola ka letsatsi lefe go fitlha ka lefe.

Go ka sosobanngwa ka gore dikao tse di filweng tse, di tlhalosa nako e e ka lekanngwang. Go itsiwe sentle gore e simolola leng ya khutla leng. Ga e akanngwe fela.

- **Botlhokwa jwa dinako tse mo pading e.**

Masome a mabedi a dinyaga le motso kgotsa e mebedi, ke nako ya tiragalo e e botlhokwa gonne e lemosa mmuisi nako e Motlalepule a gorogileng ka yona mo Gouteng.

Nako e e bontshang fa Motlalepule a tloga Lakasanta, a ya difoleteng gonne basetsana ba ba nnang nae, ba mo logetse maano a a bosula a go mo senyetsa botshelo, e tsepame.

Go lemosa mmuisi nako e Motlalepule a tsenang mo thaelong ka yona, tsatsi la tshipi, nako e le supa maitseboa mo Thandi o tsenyang Motlalepule mo phaposing ya gagwe. Kwa teng o betelelwa ke mosimane wa 'tedu tsa katse, mme kwa morago o a ima.

2.6.1.3. Nako ya tsa loago '*Social period*'

Lebaka (1999:52) o tthalosa nako ya tsa loago ka gore e akaretsa dilo le mekgwa ya bogologolo, tsa setšhaba se se rileng. Dilo le mekgwa e, di tswelletsa dikgang ka botlalo tebang le tikologo e e rileng. Serudu le ba bangwe (1995:71-73) bona ba re nako e kgona go fetola seemo sa dilo. Se se diragalang se kgona go bonala, le seo se ka kgonang go diragala morago ga foo. Seno se raya gore nako ga e eme felo go le gongwe. E fetoga go ya ka dipaka tsa yona.

Go tla nopolwa dipolelwana go tswa go *Omphile Umphi Modise* go bontsha tiriso ya mafoko a a kayang nako ya gompieno:

Fa (Motlalepule le MmaSebolai) ba ntse ba tsamaya ba kopana le **lepodisi** (ts.4).

Fa ba sena go nna ba kabakanya ka sebaka se seleele, ga tswa mosetsana wa **mooki** mo segotlong sa ntlo e (ts.4).

Fa ba ya ba lebile legae MmaMosidi a tshoganyetsa mogatse ka gore “Ke utlwa go twe **go na le bana ba bantlenyana kwa Ikageleng**. A ga re ithuele mongwe wa bone?” (ts.6).

RraMosidi e ne e le moeteledipele wa somo la banna ba ipitsa **Baitiredi**, ba direla mo **Moranodi o kopanelang gone le Monyane**, ka fa ga **Masepala** (ts.42).

RraModise o ne a tsogelela kwa **ofising** moso mongwe le mongwe e re le phirima a bo a tladitse **manki** ka **dipampiri** tse o tlhotseng a di gagola, a re ga a **kwala sentle** (ts.42).

Mo tshetsaneng ga bo go le mosetsana mongwe yo motshwana, a bidiwa Thandi, morwadia Manana, ga bone e le kwa **Natala**, gaufi le **molapo wa Encandu**, fa go kileng ga bo go le **sekolo se segolo sa Pholile**, mo metlheng ele ya maloba (ts.3).

Dikao tse **lepodisa**, **mooki**, le **ntlokgodisetsong ya bana kwa Ikageleng** le tse dingwe tse di bontshitsweng fa godimo di lemosa gore ditiragalo tsa sekwalwa di diragala mo nakong ya segompieno. Mo metlheng ya bogologolo batho ba ne ba sa tsene sekolo. Ba sa dire ditiro tsa dithuto. Ba ne ba lema fela kwa ntle ga thuto. Go jalo le kwa ntlokgodisetsong ya bana kwa Ikageleng, gona ke lefelo le le lebaganeng le legae la go godisetsa le go tlhokomela bana ba ba se nang batsadi. Go ka godisetsa le bana ba ba tlhokang tlamelo e e tshwanetseng. Bogologolo matlo a, a ne a se teng. Mo malatsing a segompieno fa motho a belege ngwana mme a sa kgone go mo tlamela, kgotsa a sa mmatle, o mo isa kwa ntlokgodisetsong ya bana. Bogologolo o ne o mo naya mongwe wa losika gore a itlhokomelele ene. E bile e ne e le moila go bona mosadi a sa batle ngwana wa gagwe. O ne a mo godisa le fa a tlhoka.

Go ya ka dikao tse di tshalositsweng, go bonala sentle gore dipaka tsa jaanong le tsa bogologolo di a farologana.

2.6.1.4. Kelo ya nako ya ditiragalo

Go ya go tlhokomelwa fela ditiragalo tse di thusang go tlhagisa kelo ya nako ya ditiragalo mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise*.

Nako ya ditiragalo e e buiwang ke mokwadi e ya go akarediwa go ya ka lenaane le:

A	Ditiragalo tsa padi e, di simolola fa Motlalepule a goroga mo Gouteng a le dinyaga di le masome a mabedi le motso kgotsa e mebedi (ts.2) Ga feta `nyaga tse pedi a ntse a nna kwa 275 Lakasanta. (ts.2). O a tloga. O hudugela kwa difoleteng.	2 dingwaga
B	E ne e se lefela Thandi a ntse `nyaga tse di tsheletseng mo Gouteng (ts.3) O itse mekgwa le bonweenwee jwa mo Gouteng. Ke ka ntlha e a kgonang go raela Motlalepule bonolo.	6 dingwaga
D	Morwa wa ga Motlalepule, e leng Omphile o na le dinyaga di le supa a ntse a mo lathile. Motlalepule o bona	

	<p>mosimanyana a ka nna `ngwaga di supa a tshameka ka kolotsana mo mmileng (ts.6). Motlalepule o gopola morwae gone o lekana le yo a mmonang</p>	7 dingwaga
E	<p>Loeto la ga RraMosidi le MmaMosidi fa ba ya go batla ngwana wa mosimane kwa Ikageleng ke malatsi a maratara. (ts.6)</p>	6 malatsi
F	<p>... e ne e re fa mosimane a feditse go disa, ke gore fa a le nyaga tse di fetang lesome le metso e metlhano, e be e le gone a romelwang sekolong go ipaakanyetsa tlhomamiso ya ga Moruti gore e tle e re a nyala, a ba a itse go kwala (ts.21)</p>	8 dingwaga
G	<p>Ga feta `nyaga di le pedi(bo Modise) ba ise ba bone maungo a maduo a bone; ba nna ba ntse ba solofetse `tsatsi la thobo(ts.22)</p>	
H	<p>le Ya re Modise a le seemeng sa botlhano, kgwedi e le ya Lwetse, rraagwemogolo a re a baakanye diterekegutu, gore e tle e</p>	

	re pula ya kgogolamoko e na... ba leme tshabatsie.	7 dingwaga
--	--	------------

Ka gore ditiragalo tse di diragala ka nako e le nngwe di dira; ditiragalo tse di buiwang ke mokwadi ke dingwaga di le somamararo pedi le malatsi a le maratara.

2.6.2. Nako e e akanngwang

1. Fa Motlalepule a na le dingwaga di le pedi kwa Gouteng, Thandi o ne a setse a na le dingwaga di le thataro a le kwa Gouteng. Dingwaga tse nne tse go feta tsa Motlalepule, ga di a buiwa ke mokwadi. Le fa go ntse jalo, di akaretswa mo dingwageng tsona tse di builweng ke mokwadi.
2. Ditiragalo tse pedi tse, e leng:
 - (i) go ima ga Motlalepule morago ga dingwaga di le pedi a le mo Gouteng, le
 - (ii) go gola ga ngwana wa ga Motlalepule go fitlha a na le dingwaga di le supa, di dira dingwaga di le robongwe. Nako e, ke e e diragalang ka fa gare ga nako e e builweng ke mokwadi.
3. Tiragalo ya go gola ga ngwana wa ga Motlalepule go tloga go dingwaga tse di supang go fitlha go dingwaga tse di sometlhano, ga e a buiwa. E dira dingwaga di le robedi. Le yona ke tiragalo e e diragalang ka fa gare ga nako e e buiwang ke mokwadi.

4. Go tla tsewa gore Modise, morwa Motlalepule, o dirile dipoloma ya borutabana morago ga seema sa borataro. Seema sa borataro se tsaya ngwaga o le mongwe. Dipoloma ya borutabana o e dira ka dingwaga di le pedi. Tsotlhe di dira dingwaga di le tharo. Tiragalo e ga e wele ka fa gare ga nako e e builweng ke mokwadi, e ka akanngwa fela.
5. Go tsaya dingwaga di le pedi gape fa Modise a romelwa Mangaung go ya go ithutela malepa a go bopa batho seopasengwe. Le gona tiragalo e ga e wele ka fa gare ga nako e e builweng ke mokwadi. Ke e e akanngwang fela.
6. Modise o direla lekgotla la Baitiredi go bopa batho gore ba nne seopasengwe. O nyala Matlakala. Tsotlhe tse, di diragala mo dingwageng tse di ka nnang nne. Nako e, le yona ga e wele mo nakong e e builweng ke mokwadi, ke e e akanngwang fela.
7. Go ka fopholetswa gore morago ga dingwaga di le thataro, Modise o kopana le mmaagwe, Motlalepule, a na le mosadi wa gagwe Matlakala, mme mmaagwe a tlhokafala.

Nako e e buiwang ke mokwadi ke dingwaga di le somamararo pedi, fa e kopanngwa. Nako e e akanngwang, e leng: go dira seema sa borataro ngwaga o le mongwe, go dira dipoloma ya borutabana dingwaga tse pedi, go ithutela malepa a go bopa batho seoposengwe dingwaga di le pedi, go dira, go nyala dingwaga di le nne, le go kopana ga Modise le mmaagwe dingwaga di le thataro, di dira dingwaga di le sometlhano.

Ka tsela e, nako ya ditiragalo tsa padi e, ya go akanngwa, e ka nna dingwaga di le sometlhano, mme fa di kopana le dingwaga tse di somaamararo-pedi tse di builweng ke mokwadi di dira somamanesupa ya dingwaga. Fa go tlhakannngwa dinako tse pedi tse, go tla lemogwa gore nako ya ditiragalo tsa padi e, e ka nna dingwaga di le somaamanesupa.

2.7. LEFELO

Go ya ka Malimabe (1998:37) lefelokgang ke mafelo ao baanelwa ba tshelang mo go ona le mo ditiragalo tsa sekwalwa di diragalang gone. Phala (1999:51-52) le Mojalefa (1997:27) ba aroganya lefelo ka mefuta e mebedi, e leng, mafelo a a rileng le mafelo a ditiragalo. Mafelo a ditiragalo ke a a sa akanngweng ke mokwadi, fa a a rileng e le a akanngwang.

2.7.1. Mafelo a a akanngwang/a a rileng

Phala (1999:52) o tlhalosa mafelo a a akanngwang gore ke mafelo a a sa bonweng ka matlho a nama, mme a a gopolwa ka tlhaloganyo fela. Go sedimosa seno, go ya go nopolwa dikao go tswa go *Omphile Umphi Modise*.

- (a) Ke lotlatlana. MmaSebolai le Motlalepule a belege ngwana ba tsamaya ba raletse thota go ya **ntlheng ya borwa** (ts.4).

- (b) Thandi a bolelela Motlalepule gore ga e ke e re batho ba agile mmogo, ba fapaane **mo tseleng** ba suma jaaka nku tsa maferelane (ts.3).
- (c) Ya re tsatsi lengwe RraMosidi le MmaMosidi ba tswa **Tshiping**, MmaMosidi a bona mosimanyana a ka nna 'ngwaga di supa a tshameka ka kolotsana mo mmileng, a se ka a itse gore o ka itshoka jang (ts.6).
- (d) Fa RraMosidi le MmaMosidi ba tsena **mo segotlong**, MmaMosidi a etelela mogatse pele gore fa mongwe wa baoki a ka mo itse, a mo kope gore a se ka a rothisa mmutla madi (ts.7).
- (e) MmaMosidi o gopola gore gongwe, morwae o tlhokafetse. MmaMosidi a boa **kgakala** (ts.8).

Fa go buiwa ka **ntlheng ya Bophirima, mo tseleng, kgakala** le dikao tse dingwe tse di filweng fa godimo, ga go tlhalosege gore ke fa kae mo lefatsheng. Go tshwana le fa e le **mo tseleng**, ga go na yo o itseng gore ke fa **kae mo tseleng**. Ke ka ntlha eo, go buiwang gore ke mafelo a akanngwang. Le fa go ntse jalo mafelo a, a botlhokwa ka gonne ditiragalo tse di botlhokwa tsa padi e, di diragala mo go one. Ka lotlatlana, Mmasebolai le Motlalepule a belege ngwana ba tsamaya ba raletse thota go ya **ntlheng ya borwa** (ts.4).

2.7.2. Mafelo a a sa akanngweng a ditiragalo

Phala (1999:51) o tthalosa gore mafelo a a sa akanngweng ke mafelo a tlhago ao a itsiweng le ka maina. Fa a tswelletsa pele kang e, Mojalefa (1997:27) a re ke mafelo a tlhago a go buiwang maina a ona mo sekwalweng jaaka Gouteng, Polokwane, jalo jalo.

Go ya go tlhokomelwa mafelo a se kae ao a dirisitsweng ke mokwadi, go bontsha mofuta o wa tikologo.

- (a) Ga feta nyaga tse pedi Motlalepule a nna kwa **275 Lakasanta**, a dira mo meseseng mo **Doornfontein**, gaufi le fa tshutshumakgala tsa botlhabatsatsi di fetang gone (ts.2).
- (b) Mo tshetsaneng e e nnang kwa difoleteng e, ga bo go le mosetsana mongwe yo motshwana, a bidiwa Thandi, morwadia Manana ga bone e le kwa tlase kwa **Natala**, gaufi le molapo wa Encandu, fa o ya o lebile mo **Lewatleng la India**, fa go kileng ga bo go le sekolo se segolo sa **Pholile**, mo metlheng ele ya maloba (ts.3).
- (c) Motlalepule o batla morwae. Ka jalo, o bolelela RraMosidi gore o utlwa go twe go na le bana ba bantlenyana kwa **Ikageleng** (ts.6).

Fa go sekasekwa dikao tse **275 Lakasanta**, **Doornfontein**, **Natala** le dikao tse dingwe tse mokwadi a di dirisitseng mo pading e, tse di leng fa godimo go lemogiwa gore ke mafelo a mokwadi a a tthalosang ka maina a ona. Ga a fopholetse, e bile ga a akanngwe gonne ke mafelo ao a supiwang, a ditiragalo di diragalang mo go one. Le one mafelo a,

a botlhokwa thata gonne mo go one go diragala ditiragalo tse di botlhokwa tse di tlhalosiwang ke mokwadi mo pading e.

Go tla rungwa ka gore lefelo le bua ka mafelo a a akanngwang le a a sa akanngweng. Mafelo otlhe a laolwa ke setlhogo.

Fa go sekasekwa diteng tsa *Omphile Umphi Modise* go tlhokometswe lenaane le: tshosobanyo ya diteng tsa *Omphile Umphi Modise*, setlhogo, e leng, patlisiso ya diteng le semelo sa baanelwabagolo, tlhaloso ya dielemente tse nne tsa diteng, e leng, baanelwa, ditiragalo, nako le lefelo. Mo tshekatshekong ya baanelwa go dirisitswe lenaane le, tebagano, bokgontshi, boganetsi, bothusi le bothusegi. Kamano magareng ga baanelwa ba diteng le pharologano fa gare ga boganetsi le bothusi di tlhokometswe. Gape go lemogilwe gore boganetsi jwa moganediwa Motlalepule ke bothusi ba ga moganetsi Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng/tedu tsa katse fa boganetsi ba gagwe e le bothusi ba ga moganediwa Motlalepule.

Mo ditiragalong tsa diteng go lemogilwe mefuta e le mebedi ya ditiragalo, e leng, mofuta o o botlhokwa wa ditiragalo tse dikgolo le mofuta wa ditiragalopotlana kgotsa ditiragalotlaleletso. Mofuta o mogolo o kgaogantse ka ditiragalo tsa ntlha tsa fa gare le tsa bofelo. Mofuta wa ditiragalopotlana ke ona o bopang ditiragalo tse dikgolo. Tikologo e arogantswe ka dikarolo tse pedi, e leng, nako le lefelo. Nako e arogantswe ka dikarolo tse pedi. Tsona ke nako ya kanedi le nako ya tsa loago/hisetori. Lefelo le lona le na le dikarolwana di le pedi, e bong, lefelo le le rileng le lefelo la ditiragalo.

2.8. TSHOSOBANYO

Mo kgaolong e go sosobantswe ditiragalo tsa diteng tsa setlhangwa se go thusa mmuisi go tshaloganya patlisiso e. Setlhogo sa padi e, *Omphile Umphi Modise* se tshalositswe fa e le matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule. Go tswelera pele ga tshalosiwa dielemente tsa diteng, e leng, baanelwa, ditiragalo, nako le lefelo. Baanelwa ba diteng bona ke moganediwa le moganetsi. Moganediwa o ganediwa go siama ga gagwe ke moganetsi. Baanelwa ba, ba diragalelwa ke ditiragalo. Ditiragalo tse di arogantswe ka dikarolo tse pedi, e leng, ditiragalotshwanelo le ditiragalo ka botsona. Tsona ditiragalo tse, di diragala mo tikologong e e rileng. Tikologo e bopilwe ke nako le lefelo. Go na le nako e e rileng, ya ditiragalo le ya tsa loago. Go lemogilwe gore go na le nako e e akanngwang, e leng, eo mokwadi a sa e tshalasang mo setlhangweng sa gagwe. Lefelo lona ke moo baanelwa ba tshelang mo go lona. Lona le arogantswe ka dikarolo di le pedi, e leng, mafelo a a rileng le mafelo a ditiragalo.

KGAOLO YA BORARO

3.1. THULAGANYO

Mo kgaolong e thulaganyo/poloto e ile go tthalosiwa fa e lebagane le tthaloso ya baanelwa ba bagolo ba *Omphile Umphi Modise*. Ka go rialo, go ka se tthalosiwe poloto ka botlalo mo patlisisong e. Go tlile go tthalosiwa dikgopolo tsa poloto tse di lebaganeng le maikaelelo a patlisiso e fela.

3.1.1. Matseno

Go tlile go tlhokomelwa dikgopolo tse di latelang tsa thulaganyo:

- Thitokgang
- Kakanyetso
- Tthaloso ya dikgato tsa thulaganyo.

3.1.2. Thitokgang

Fa go tthalosiwa thitokgang mo kgaolong ya ntlha, go tthalositswe gore ke maikaelelo a mokwadi a batlang go a naya mmuisi. Go tswelelapele Beckson le Ganz (1960:223) ba tthalosa thitokgang ka go re:

Theme is sometimes used to indicate the subject of a work; the term theme is more frequently employed to designate its central idea of thesis. A theme may be stated directly or indirectly. When

not specifically given it may be abstracted from the work.

Ba gatelela gore thitokgang/morero o ka lebagana le leina la setlhangwa kgotsa kgopolo e kgolo e sekwalwa se theilweng mo godimo ga ona. Abrams (1971:102) ena a re thitokgang e tlhotlheletsa mmuisi go buisetsa kwa pele. Ka jalo, e botlhokwa thata, gonne ke yona e e laolang go rulaganngwa ga dikgang gore e nne setlhangwa, mme gona e farologana le setlhogo. Groenewald (1993:14) o neela pharologano magareng ga thitokgang le setlhogo ka tsela e:

Thitokgang/Morero	Setlhogo
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • O dirisiwa fa go buiwa ka thulaganyo. • O tshwaraganya dithekeniki gore di lebagane. • Ke kang e kgolo e e botlhokwa go laola thulaganyo ya dikgang gore e nne sekwalwa. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Se dirisiwa fa go buiwa ka diteng. • Se golaganya dikgang tsa diteng gore e nne kang e le nngwe. • Ke tshosobanyo ya bofelo ya dikgang tsa diteng.

3.1.3. Thitokgang ya *Omphile Umphi Modise*

3.1.3.1. Matlhotlhapelo

Kwa tshimologong go tthalositswe matlhotlhapelo ka bokhutshwane. Mo kgaolong e, kgopolo eo e tla tthalosiwa ka botlalo.

Ka nako nngwe go fitlha sephiri go a bolaya. Motlalepule o goroga mo boemelaterene jwa Gouteng a sa itse ope. Teng o rakana le mosimane wa tedu tsa katse, yo o ikopelang lerato mo go ena. Motlalepule o a mo gana. Morago o ineelela basetsana ba Lakasanta go ya go nna le bona. Matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule a simolola fa basetsana ba Lakasanta ba mo fufegela gonne a le montle go ba gaisa. O fudugela kwa difoleteng. Teng o fitlhela Thandi, mosetsana wa Natala. Thandi o lemoga gore Motlalepule o montle go mo gaisa. Thandi le mosimane wa tedu tsa katse ba loga maano a a botlhajana go mo sulafaletsa botshelo jotlhe jwa gagwe. Thandi le mosimane wa tedu tsa katse ba nosa Motlalepule mogodungwana o o nang le more o o robatsang. Motlalepule fa a robetse o betelelwa ke mosimane wa tedu tsa katse. O a mo imisa, mme Motlalepule o belega ngwana wa mosimane. O mmaya letshwao ka fa morago ga tsebe. Motlalepule a goletlwa ke matlhotlhapelo. O belega ngwana yo a sa itseng rraagwe. Ga a na madi a go godisa ngwana yoo. O tsaya ngwana o mo isa kwa ntlokgodisetsong ya bana kwa Ikageleng.

Motlalepule o nyalwa ke monna yo mongwe, mme ba tshegofatswa ka ngwana wa mosetsana. Ba mmitsa Mosidi. Makoa a Motlalepule, ke go lobela mogatse sephiri sa gore o na le morwa wa dikgora. Sephiri se, se tlhorontsha Motlalepule botshelo jotlhe jwa gagwe. O tsenwa ke bolwetse. RraMosidi, monna wa ga Motlalepule, o tsaya madi otlhe a gagwe go isa Motlalepule dingakeng, mme ga a fole. Motlalepule o sotlega thata ka ntlha ya sephiri se a se fitlhetseng RraMosidi. O kwala pampitshana o e baya mo letloleng la gagwe, mo go itseng ena fela. O tlhalosa ka ngwana yo o mmelegeng, mme a mo isa kwa

ntlologodisetsong. Bolwetse jo bo tlhotsweng ke sephiri jo, bo golela pele. Motlalepule o busediwa gae kwa Matile, ka ntlha ya bolwetse. Modise o tla le mogatse, go tla go lekola Motlalepule. Motlalepule o bona letshwao ka fa morago ga tsebe ya ga Modise. O mmita Omphile, leina le a mo theileng lona fa a sena go mmelega. O a tlhokofala.

RraMosidi le Modise ba fitlhela pampitshana ele ya ga Motlalepule. Ke gona ba lemogang sephiri sa ga Motlalepule sa gore Modise ke ene Omphile morwa wa dikgora wa ga Motlalepule.

3.1.4. Kakanyetso ‘design’

Mojalefa (1994:63) o tlhalosa kakanyetso gore ke foreime kgotsa motheo o mo go ona go tlamilweng kanelo ya sekwalwa sengwe le sengwe. O tswelela pele ka gore ke lenaane la paterone la motheo wa sekwalwa. Groenewald (1993:15) o tlhalosa gore lenaane leo ke la dikarolo tsa thulaganyo tse di botlhokwa go tsweledisa pele thitokgang. Dikarolo tse, tsa thulaganyo, di lebagane le matlhakore a mabedi. Mo go ona go ya go tlhophiwa letlhakore le le lengwe fela, go tlhalosa semelo sa molwantshiwa.

Go ya ka Phala (1999:57) lenaane la matlhakore a a umakilweng fa godimo a a bontshang gore molwantshiwa ke mongwe wa baanelwa ba ba botlhokwa ka gonne ke motho:

- (a) yo o nang le maemo/wa ka gale
- (b) yo o nang le makoa/yo o tlhokang makoa.

- (c) yo o ikokobetsang/yo o sa ikokobetseng.
- (d) yo o amogelwang/yo o sa amogelweng.

Mojalefa (1997:31) o gatelela gore kakanyetso e bothokwa thata gonne e tlhopha mofuta wa sekwalwa. Ke gore e thusa go lemosa gore sekwalwa se wela mo mofuteng ofe. Ka jalo, fa go twe sekwalwa ke sa botseka, boitsholo, thuto kgotsa matlhotlhapelo, se tlhophilwe go ya ka lenaane la mofuta wa sekwalwa.

Gape kakanyetso e bontsha semelo sa moanelwa(mogolo) gonne ka sona go kgonwa go itse gore ke motho wa mofuta mang. Fa go sekasekiwa semelo sa moanelwa ofe kgotsa ofe, go tshwanetse go lebelelwa kakanyetso ya sekwalwa seo. Kakanyetso ya mofuta mongwe le mongwe ya sekwalwa e na le ditheo tse di builweng, mme mo go tsona go tlhophiwa letlhakore le le lengwe. Go ya go lekolwa kakanyetso ya ga *Omphile Umphi Modise*. Fa *Omphile Umphi Modise* e tlhokomelwa sentle go tla lemogiwa gore e wela mo mofuteng wa matlhotlhapelo. Kakanyetso ya matlhotlhapelo e supa fa molwantshiwa e le moanelwa wa:

- (a) Maemo a a kwa godimo/yo o tlhokang maemo.
- (b) Yo o nang le makoa
- (c) Yo o sotlegang
- (d) Yo o sa amogelweng.

Jaanong fa go buisiwa *Omphile Umphi Modise* go lemogilwe gore molwantshiwa, Motlalepule, ke moanelwa yo o nang le maemo a a kwa tlase.

3.1.4.1. Molwantshiwa jaaka motho yo o nang le maemo

Motlalepule o goroga mo Gouteng a sotlegile. Ga a na bonno. O amogelwa ke basetsana ba Lakasanta e bile o bona tiro kwa Doornfontein. Basetsana ba simolola go mo logela maano a a bosula ka gonne a ba gaisa ka bontle ka e bile ba tshaba gore o tla ba phamolela makau. O tloga Lakasanta, o ya kwa difoleteng. Teng o simolola go itse go se siame ga motse wa Gouteng. Thandi o laletsa mosimane wa tedu tsa katse go tla go betelela Motlalepule. Morago ga go betelelwa Motlalepule o a ima. O belega ngwana wa mosimane, mme o mmita Omphile. Ka ntlha ya go tlhoka bonno, dijo le diaparo, o tsaya ngwana o mo isa kwa ntlokgodisetsong. Ga a na motho yo o mo thusang.

3.1.4.2. Molwantshiwa jaaka motho yo o se nang makoa

Motlalepule o isa ngwana wa dikgora kwa ntlokgodisetsong ya bana. Ga a mo ise kwa ga gaabo. O itshwere jaaka motho yo o se nang legae le ba ga gaabo tota. Morago ga go isa ngwana kwa ntlokgodisetsong, Motlalepule o bona tiro. O simolola go ratana le mosimane wa Thaba Ntsho. Mosimane wa ThabaNtšho o nyala Motlalepule. Ba tshegofatswa ka ngwana wa mosetsana, mme ba mmita Mosidi. Motlalepule yo jaanong a bidiwang MmaMosidi ga a bolelele RraMosidi gore o na le ngwana wa dikgora. O tlhologelela ngwana yo wa gagwe. Ga a itse gore a bolelele monna wa gagwe jang. O boifa gore gongwe lenyalo le ka senyega fa a ka bolelela monna wa gagwe nnete. O kopa RraMosidi gore ba ye go batla ngwana wa mosimane

kwa ntlokgodisetsong ka maikaelelo a gore gongwe a ka fitlhela morwa wa gagwe teng. Ga a mo fitlhele. Motlalepule o simolola go tlhorontshega mo moweng letsatsi le letsatsi. Letsatsi lengwe le lengwe o tsena mo tseleng go ya go batla ngwana wa gagwe. Fa monna a ya tirong, Motlalepule o mo sala morago go ya go batla morwae. Fa a itse gore monna o e tla, o boela gae. Tiro e ya letsatsi le letsatsi ya mo tlhokisa boikhutso. Bana ba simolola go mo tshaba ba mmita Dinalana gonne ba gopola gore o utswa bana.

Motlalepule o etela Malebela mo sephiring. O batla gore Malebela a mmolelele gore ngwana wa gagwe o kwa kae, gonne a na le bokgoni jwa bodupe, jwa go bona tse di tlang le tse di fetileng. Malebela o mmolelela gore o tla mmona, mme ga a ne a mo itse. Motlalepule o bona mosimane mongwe a eteletse basimane ba kwa Maikutlwane pele, ba tswa go tsaya lofetlho lwa pula. Sebe sa phiri ke gore Motlalepule ga a itse fa e le ena morwa wa gagwe. O tsenwa ke bolwetse jwa tlhogo. RraMosidi o tsaya madi otlhe a gagwe a leka go alafa MmaMosidi fela ga a fole. Ee, go mo pepeneneng gore bolwetse bo simololwa ke sephiri sa go fitlha morwae wa dikgora.

3.1.4.3. Molwantshiwa jaaka motho yo o sotlegang

Motlalepule o tshwenngwa ke makoa. Bokoja jo bogolo jwa gagwe ke go fitlha sephiri se se mo tlholelang bolwetse. O tlhoka boiketlo mo moweng. MmaMosidi o sotlega go fitlha kwa losong.

3.1.4.4. Molwantshiwa jaaka motho yo o sa amogelesegeng

RraMosidi o tsaya MmaMosidi o mo isa kwa gae kwa Matile, ka ntlha ya bolwetse. Bolwetse jwa ga MmaMosidi bo golela pele. Motlalepule o kwala pampitshana mo sephiring, mo a tthalosang gore o na le morwa wa dikgora yo o mo isitseng kwa ntlokgodisetsong ka ntlha ya khumanego le tshotlego. O e fitlha mo letloleng, mo go itseng ena fela. Motlalepule o a tlhorontshega go ya losong. Modise o tla go lekola MmaMosidi. MmaMosidi o bona letshwao le a mmeileng lona ka fa morago ga tsebe. O mmita Omphile, mme morago ga moo a tlhokafala. Morago ga phitlho ya MmaMosidi, ena Motlalepule, e leng, mmaagwe Modise, ga fitlhelwa pampitshana e MmaMosidi a e kwadileng, e e tthalosang gore Modise ke Omphile. Ke gona ba itseng nnete, sephiri se upologa fela go setse go le thari ka MmaMosidi a setse a ile ga maotwanahunyela. Ka jalo, Motlalepule, e leng, MmaMosidi o bolailwe ke go fitlha sephiri.

Go leka go digela dintlha tse di fa godimo ka ga molwantshiwa, go matshwanedi go bontsha ka bokhutshwane pharologano e e leng teng magareng ga thitokgang le kakanyetso. Lekganyane (1997:53) o di baya jaana:

- Thitokgang ke tebaganyo ya mokwadi, mme yona e tliša kamano ya dithekeniki tsa thulaganyo gore di lebane.

- Kakanyetso ke lenaneo le ditheo tsa thulaganyo. Yona e lebagane le motheo o go ka tweng kanedi e bopilwe mo godimo ga yona e bile e laola semelo sa molwantshiwa.

Pharoganyo e botlhokwa mo patlisisong e ka gonne e tlile go thusa go naya lesedi mo tlhalosong ya semelo sa molwantshiwa, Motlalepule.

3.1.5. Dikgato tsa thulaganyo

Cohen (1973:68), Cole le Lindemann (1990:93), Gronewald (1993:19-22) le Mojalefa (1996:13-14) ba tlhalosa gore thulaganyo e bopilwe ke dikgato di le nne, e leng, (a) tshenolo (b) tswelletsopele (c) setlhoa le (d) tharabologo. Fa a gatelela seno Cohen a re:

The structure can be analysed in terms of (a) exposition which often comes at the beginning (b) rising action (c) climax and (d) denouement or conclusion.

Puo ya ga Cohen (1973:68) e gatelela dikgato tse nne tsa thulaganyo. Ka tsela e, patlisiso e ya go tlhalosa dikgato tse nne tsa thulaganyo.

3.1.5.1. Tshenolo ‘Exposition’

Mojalefa (1997:32) le Maibelo le ba bangwe (1994:1) ba tlhalosa tshenolo ka go re ke matseno a dikgato tse mokwadi a tlileng go di anegela mmuisi. Seno se kaya gore ke dikgang tsa diteng, tse di baakantsweng ke mokwadi fa a simolola go kwala sekwalwa. Ke ka ntlha e Cohen (1973:69) a reng:

Exposition, which often comes at the beginning, provides the necessary background material for a reader. It establishes the setting, creates the basic atmosphere, provides information about the pasts of characters, and delineates vital contexts for the events which will soon begin to unfold.

Cohen o gatelela gore tshenolo e naya tlhaloso ya ditiragalo (dikgang), baanelwa, nako le felo. Brooks le ba bangwe (1979:7) bona ba re tshenolo e na le dielemente, e leng, baanelwa, ditiragalo, nako le felo.

Mojalefa (1997:12) o ruma ditlhaloso tse, ka go re mo go tshenolo mokwadi o tshwanetse go senolela mmuisi baanelwa, ditiragalo, nako le felo, e leng, dielemente tsa tshenolo. O tswelela pele mo tsebeng ya lesometharo ka go tlhalosa gore tshenolo ke mo mokwadi a tlhalosang tshimologo ya kgotlhang, tshimologo ya ditiro, jalo le jalo. Matseno ao a fetela mo go simololang kgotlhang ya ntlha.

3.1.6. Kgotlhang

Cohen (1973:18) o tlhalosa kgopolo e ya kgotlhang ka go re ke:

The collision of opposing forces in prose, fiction, drama or poetry...

Cohen o gatelela gore kgotlhang e botlhokwa mo dikwalweng. Ka gone go ya ka Conradie (1981:17) ga go na tswelelopele ya ditiragalo fa e se teng:

... dit is moeilik om werklik gang in die handeling te kry sonder dat daar een of ander probleem en gevolglik stryd of botsing is.

Heese le Lawton (1988:113) ba tswelidisa pele tlhaloso ya kgotlhang ka go re:

The aspects of human experience with which drama is concerned is conflict. Conflict within an individual, between individuals, between man and circumstances, fate and environment.

Le fa gona a golaganya kgotlhang le terama le mo dikwalweng tse dingwe e botlhokwa. Yona e lebagane le moanelwa le moanelwa yo mongwe, moanelwa le maikutlo a gagwe le moanelwa le tikologo e a tshelang mo go yona. Ke ka ntlha e Mojalefa (1995:22) a tlhalosang go tswelidisa pele gore kgotlhang e na le tiro e e rileng mo sekwalweng. Ka jalo, katlego ya sekwalwa sengwe le sengwe e letse mo magetleng a tiro e ntle ya go nna le bothata, mme yona kgotlhang eo, e bonagala sentle fa e tlhokomelwa mo matlhakoreng a mabedi, e leng, (a) letlhakore la go siama le (b) letlhakore la go se siame. Serudu (1989:49) a re matlhakore ao a lebagane le la kgotlhang ya ka fa gare le la kgotlhang ya ka fa ntle. O tswelidisa pele tlhaloso eo ya gagwe ka go re kgotlhang ya ka fa gare e lebagane le fa moanelwa a lwa le dikgopolo tsa gagwe malebana le kgang e e rileng. Kgotlhang ya ka fa ntle yona e supa pharologano magareng ga baanelwa. E ka nna go betsana ka mabole, go rogana kgotsa go tlabana ka marumo. Go

tswelela, pele Serudu (1989:49) o aroganya kgotlhang ka mefuta e mebedi, e leng, (a) kgotlhang ya ka fa ntle le (b) kgotlang ya ka fa gare fela.

Go tla rungwa ka gore kgotlhang e bothokwa gonne e tlhotlheletsa mmuisi go buisetsa pele. Phisegelo eo ya go buisetsa pele ke yona kgogedi.

3.1.7. Kgogedi

Yelland, Jones le Easton (1983:184) ba tthalosa kgogedi ka go re ke:

The plot element that keeps the reader or audience in doubt or in a state of expectancy as to the outcome of the situation or the whole story. It is part of the stock-in-trade of the novelist ... to keep the reader “on tender hooks”.

Boratori ba, ba kaya gore kgogedi e e tlhola phisegelo ya go buisetsa kwa pele. Mmuisi o tlhotlheletswa ke kgotlhang go buisetsa pele ditiragalo tsa sekwalwa go fitlha kwa bokhutlong. Ke ka ntlha e Gray (1984:159) le Abrams (1993:16) ba reng babuisi ba tshwanetse go gapeletswa go batla go itse se se tlileng go diragala, mme ga ba gakgamatswe ke ditiragalo tse dintšhwa.

Abrams gona mo tsebeng eo o tiisa kang e ka go re:

As a plot progresses it arouses expectations in the audience or reader about the future the course of events and actions and how characters will respond to them. A lack of certainty, on the part of a concerned reader, about what is going to happen, especially to characters with whom the reader has established a bond of sympathy is known as suspense.

Abrams o gatelela gore go rata go itse dikgang tse di latelang go tlhola phisegelo ya mmuisi.

Groenewald (1993:16) o ruma ka go re kgogedi e maphata a mabedi. La ntlha e mabapi le tseo mmuisi a di itseng (tse di itebagantseng le setlhogo le diteng), mme la bobedi e malebana le tse mmuisi a sa di itseng (di lebagane le thitokgang le thulaganyo).

Kgogedi ke mokgwa o mokwadi a o dirisang go pateletsa mmuisi go buisa sekwalwa go fitlha kwa bokhutlong. Seno se tlhola phisegelo ya go batla go itse seo a sa se itseng, e leng, molaetsa wa mokwadi.

3.1.8. Tshosobanyo

Go tlhalositswe dikgato tsa thulaganyo, e leng, tshenolo, tswelelopele, setlhoa le tharabologo tsa sekwalwa. Tshenolo e tlhalositswe ka botlalo, le go re ke yona e tlholang kgotlhang gareng ga baanelwa, mme ka tsela e, e dira gore sekwalwa se nne le kgogedi. Kgogedi e tlhotlheletsa mmuisi gore a buisetse kwa pele.

3.1.9. Tlhaloso ya tshenolo mo go Omphile Umphi Modise

Jaanong go ya go tlhalosiwa tshenolo ya padi e, ka go latela lenaane le:

- (a) Tshosobanyo ya diteng tsa ga *Omphile Umphi Modise*.
- (b) Dielemente tsa tshenolo
- (c) Tiriso ya dielemente tsa tshenolo

3.1.9.1. Tshosobanyo ya diteng tsa *Omphile Umphi Modise*.

Tshenolo mo pading e, e simolola mo tsebeng ya ntlha go fitlha mo tsebeng ya bobedi. Dikgang tse di lebaganeng le tshenolo ke tse:

Motlalepule o goroga mo Gouteng ka tšhutšhumakgala. Sebe sa phiri ke gore ga a itse ope. Fa a ntse a eme jaana, go tla mosimane yo o tedutsebeng. Mosimane yo o usa sekgwama sa madi e kete ke ka phoso, a tsamaya lobakanyana e kete ga a lemoge gore se ole. A simolola go iphophola. Fa a gadima kwa morago, a bona mosetsana (Motlalepule) a se dilotse ka 'itlho le le tshologang ditete; a boa a tabogile. Maano e le gore mosetsana (Motlalepule) a tle a se nanabele, a ithaya a re mong ga a se bone, molato o tle o tsalege gone foo. Mosimane wa tedutsebeng o sela sekgwama sa gagwe, mme o ntsha letlhare la ponto o le naya Motlalepule. Motlalepule o a le gana. O bitsa Motlalepule ka leina la gagwe:

“Go siame Motlalepule wa gaetsho, e se ka ya re ka moso wa re, re go latlhile. Moennyana o pele lobone lwa waabo”(ts.2).

Motlalepule a se ka a itse gore legwaragwara le, le mo itsetse kae. A mo tshwantshanya le ngwana wa monnamogolo Setšhose wa lekgwelwa. A gakgamatswa ke gore yo, o tedutsebeng, mme yo o mo itseng ene o tedu tsa katse. Ga a itse mekgwa ya batho ba Gauteng.

Ditiragalo tse tshenolo ya ga *Omphile Umphi Modise* di theilweng godimo ga tsona ke tse:

- Kgorogo ya ga Motlalepule mo Gauteng.
- Kopano ya gagwe le mosimane wa 'tedutsebeng
- Mosimane yo, o raela Motlalepule ka madi.
- Motlalepule o gana madi ao.
- O gakgamatswa ke go utlwa mosimane yo a mo itse.

Jaanong go ile go tlhokomelwa thulaganyo ya ditiragalo tsa tshenolo go totilwe dielemente tsa thulaganyo.

3.2. DIELEMENTE TSA THULAGANYO

Mosehla (2000:95), Lebaka (1999:82) le Phala (1999:60) ba re thulaganyo e bopilwe ka dielemente di le nne, e leng:

- Baanelwa
- Ditiragalo

- Nako le
- Lefelo

3.2.1. Baanelwa

Mosehla (2000:96) a re baanelwa ba thulaganyo ba arogantswe ka dikarolo di le pedi, e leng, (a) baanelwabagolo le (b) baanelwapotlana.

3.2.1.1. Baanelwabagolo

Mojalefa (1996:14) a re baanelwabagolo ke (1) molwantshiwa (2) molwantshi le (3) motsenagare

- **Molwantshiwa**

Holman (1972:421); Lazarus le Smith (1983:17); Prince (1989:78); Shole le ba bangwe (1988:22) le boChaphole (1992:32) ba re molwantshiwa ke moanelwamogolo yo morero le kgotlhang di thaegileng mo maikaelelong le mo maitlhomong a gagwe. Conradie (1981:52) o gatelela se ka go re:

Die protagonis is die hoofkarakter of held wat in die drama die sterkste op die voorgrond tree en die toneel van die begin af oorheers.

Ditiragalo tsa sekwalwa di theilwe mo godimo ga gagwe. Beckson le Ganz (1995:217) le Serudu (1989:32) ba tlhalosa botlhokwa jwa

gagwe ka go re ke mogale 'hero' wa kanedi kgotsa tiragatso. Kruger (1988:216) o netefatsa se ka go re:

The protagonist is the main person or hero of the text. This person is mostly in the foreground and is part of the scene from the beginning to the end. His feelings and suffering are important.

Molaetsa wa setlhangwa o lebagane le ena. Ke go re mokwadi fa a kwala, o kwala ka ga gagwe. Ke ka ntlha e maikutlo a gagwe a leng bothokwa. Ka gone a le bothokwa, ga a tshwanela go fetogafetoga mo sekwalweng. Ke ka ntlha e Winks (1980:33) a reng:

...they must be consistence from first to last; the development of a charecters should not bring about drastic changes. He should remain the person we have known from the beginning to the end.

Fa a ka fetoga sekwalwa seo se tla fela le fa dikgang di ise di fele. Seno se ka tlhola tlhakatlhakano. Fa Serudu (1989:33) a ruma dikgang tsa basekaseki ba a re:

Molwantšhiwa ke yena mogale goba mogaleadi wa padi, papadi goba kanegelokopana. Ke yena a rwelego mathata le maima. Ditiragalo ka moka di lebišitšwe go yena. Ke yena yo o tanyago šedi ya mmadi ka meragelo ya gagwe. Mabakeng a

*mangwe o šitwa go fitlhelela dinepo tša gagwe ka
baka la mafokodi a nama.*

Ke moanelwa yo mogolo yo o botlhokwa gonne bogolo jwa ditiragalo tsa sekwalwa bo theilwe mo godimo ga gagwe. Mojalefa (1996:14) o oketsa ka go re ke moanelwa yo o lwantshetswang go siama kgotsa go se siame ga gagwe ke moanelwa yo mongwe, e leng, molwantshi.

Molwantshiwa mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise* ke Motlalepule. Bogolo ba ditiragalo mo pading e, bo diragalela ena. Ditiragalo tsa kanedi e, di theilwe mo godimo ga gagwe. Di dikologa ene. Mkwadi o mo lebaganya le go se siame gonne o belege ngwana wa dikgora ka tsela ya petelelo. Morago o tsaya ngwana yo o mo latlha ka go mo isa kgodisetsong ya bana ba ba tlhokang batsadi go ba itlhokomelela.

- **Molwantshi**

Holman (1972:421) o tlhalosa molwantshi e le:

*The second most important character ... the
contenders in the action.*

Molwantshi ke moanelwa wa bobedi yo o botlhokwa mo setlhangweng. Mosehla (2000:99) fa a tsweledisa pele kang e a re moanelwa yo le ena bogolo jwa ditiragalo tsa buka di itshetlegile ka ena. Conradie (1981:55) le Prince (1987:8) ba re ke mmaba kgotsa moemakgatlanong wa ditiro tsa mogale wa kanedi. Se se gatelelwa ke Lazarus le Smith (1983:17) ka go re:

*Antagonist, the chief negative character in a plot,
the one who opposes the protagonist.*

Moanelwa yo, o na le tiro e e sa siamang ya go lwantsha molwantshiwa. Baldick (1990:10-11) o mo tthalosa ka go re ke molotsana 'villain' ka gonne ditiro tsa gagwe ga di a siama. Lebaka (1999:84) ene a re ga se ka dinako tsotlhe molwantshi a fetogang motho yo o sa siamang, gantsi ke motho yo o siameng gonne o ganetsana le ditiro tse di sa siamang kgotsa tse di siameng tsa molwantshiwa.

Krüger (1988:217) o ruma kang ya boratori ba, ka go re molwantshi ke ena a nosetsang molwantshiwa ka morwalela wa mathata le matshwenyego. Maikaelelo e le go kgoreletsa molwantshiwa go fitlhela maikaelelo a gagwe. Se se gatelelwang ke go re molwantshi o lwantshetsa molwantshiwa ditiro tsa gagwe tse di siameng kgotsa tse di bosula.

Molwantshi mo pading e, ke mosimane yo o tedutsebeng/te du tsa katse, gonne ke ena yo o tshelang Motlalepule ka morwalela wa mathata le matshwenyego. Bogolo jwa ditiro tse di mo diragalelang ke diperesente di ka nna somamarataro. O fitlhelwa mo tsebeng ya ntlha jaaka mosimane yo o tedutsebeng, mo gare e le mosimane wa te du tsa katse le kwa bokhutlong jwa ditiragalo e le RraModise. O ikaelela go senyetsa Motlalepule bontle fela. Ga a mmontshe lerato. O a mmetelega, o mmelegisa ngwana wa dikgora.

- **Motsenagare/Molotlhanyi**

Holman (1972:539) le Beckson le Ganz (1960:230) ba re ke moanelwa wa boraro mo sekwalweng. Fa a tswaledisa pele kgopolo e a re:

The actor taking the part of third importance in a play.

Motsenagare ke yo mongwe wa baanelwa ba ba botlhokwa. Motshameki yo, o fitlhelwa mo terameng le mo ditlhangweng tse dingwe. BoSikwane (1989:89), Pretorius le Swart (1983:24) ba tlhalosa tiro ya gagwe ka go re ke moanelwa yo o gakatsang kgotlhang fa gare ga molwantshiwa le molwantshi. Ke ka ntlha e Serudu (1989:33) a reng:

... ke moanelwa yo o butšwetšago mollo gare ga molwantšhiwa le molwantšhi. O lebelela moo phefo e tšwago pele a ka kgatha tema. Wa gabo ke wa ka godimo.

Tiro ya moanelwa yo ke go tlhola kgotlhang. Ke ka ntlha e Conradie (1981:23-24) a reng molotlhanyi o lebagane le dikarolo tse di farologaneng, e leng, lebaka la morero wa kganetso. Ka tsela e o eme nokeng moanelwa yo o fenyang. Mojalefa (1997:14) o tswaledisa pele dikgopolo tsa boratori ba ka go re molwantshiwa le molwantshi ba lebagane le kgotlhang fa ka fa letlhakoreng je lengwe molotlhanyi a lebagane le tharabologo.

Lebaka (1999:86) o ruma ka go re baanelwa ba thulaganyo ba fiwa ditiro tse di farologaneng, e leng: (a) bolwantshiwa, (b) bolwantshi, le (c) botsereganyi.

- **Baanelwa mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise*.**

Mojalefa (1993:50) a re baanelwa ke badiragatsi '*akteurs*' go gaisa fa go twe batho '*personasies*' gonne le dilo '*instansies*' di kgona go dira tiro ya bodiragatsi le fa e se batho. Ke ka ntlha e Mosehla (2000:100) a reng le seakanngwa '*abstract*' e ka nna moanelwa.

Fa go tlhokomelwa sekwala se sa ga Monyaise go tla lemogiwa gore bontle bo dirisitswe jaaka moanelwa go ya ka tiori e e dirisitsweng ke boratoriori ba ba ka fa godimo. Bontle jwa ga Motlalepule bo tlhola kgotlhang magareng a Motlalepule le mosimane wa tedutsebeng/tedutsa katse. Bo lotlhanya baanelwa ba babedi ba. Bo gotetsa molelo wa kgotlhang magareng ga molwantshiwa le molwantshi. Motlalepule o montle go gaisa basetsana botlhe. Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng/tedutsa katse ga a kgone go mmolelela gore o a mo rata. Ka tsela e, bontle jo bo gakatsa kgotlhang e e mo pelong ya gagwe. Bo mo dira gore a logele Motlalepule maano a a mo tlholelang matlhotlhapelo botshelo jotlhe jwa gagwe. Ka jalo, bontle ke molotlhanyi.

3.3. TSHOSOBANYO

Mo kgaolong e go tlhalositswe thitokgang, kakanyetso le dikgato tsa thulaganyo. Kgato ya ntlha ya thulaganyo, e leng, tshenolo e sekasekilwe ka botlalo go bontsha le tiriso ya yona mo go *Omphile*

Umphi Modise. Go senola baanelwa ba bagolo ba setlhangwa le go lemosa kgotlhang ya ntlha mo pading e, e leng, go kopana ga Motlalepule le mosimane wa tedu tsa katse, kwa Gouteng fa Motlalepule a goroga.

Go tswelala pele baanelwa ba thulaganyo ba tlhalositswe fa ba arogantswe ka dikarolo tse pedi, e leng, baanelwabagolo le baanelwapotlana. Baanelwabagolo bona ke molwantshiwa, molwantshi le motsenagare. Molwantshiwa ke motho yo o siameng. Ene o lwantshetswa tshiamo ya gagwe ke molwantshi. Molwantshi gantsi ga a siama. Go se siame ga gagwe go bonwa ka maano a a bosula ao a a logelang molwantshi.

Molwantshiwa ke Motlalepule fa Molwantshi e le mosimane yo o tedu tsebeng/ tedu tsa katse/ RraModise. Motsenagare ene ke bontle jwa ga Motlalepule.

Motsenagare mo pading e, ke molotlhanyi gonne a tshameka tiro ya go lotlhanya molwantshiwa le molwantshi. O gotsa molelo le go o futswetsa magareng ga baanelwa ba babedi ba. O kgona go dira gore ba betsane ka noga e tshela a bo a rarabolole bothata jo. Bontle jwa ga Motlalepule e nna motsenagare mo pading e. Bo mo tlišetsa mathata a petelelo ka mosimane wa tedu tsebeng/tedu tsa katse/ RraModise a leka go mo senyetsa bone bontle joo.

Morago ga tiragalo e Motlalepule o belega ngwana wa dikgora, e leng, Omphile Umphi Modise. O mo isa kwa ntlokgodisetsong morago o bona tiro eo e mo thusang gore bontle joo bo boe gape morago ga go

senyega. Bona bontle jo bo mo thusa gore a nyalwe ke mosimane wa Thaba Ntsho.

Ka tsela e motsenagare yoo o kgona go tlisa mathata le go a rarabolola. O kgona go gotsa molelo le go o tima magareng ga baanelwa ba babedi ba, e leng, molwantshiwa le molwantshi. Seno se se raya gore o itse go dira kgotlhang le kagiso go gaisa baanelwa ba bangwe.

KGAOLO YA BONE

4.1. MATSENO

Mo kgaolong e, go tlile go sekasekwa matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise* a a mo welang ka ntlha ya popego le maitsholo a gagwe. Pele go ka tlhokomelwa molemo wa moanelwa yo, e leng, molwantshiwa, go tla tlhalosiwa boanedi ka kakaretso.

4.2. SEMELO SA MOANELWA

Serudu (1992:42) a re semelo:

Ke dipharologantšho tše bohlokwa tšeo di kgethologanyago motho go ba moanegwa go ba bangwe. Dintlha tšeo di utolla bomotho bja moanegwa pading goba papading le ge e le mo kanegelokopana.

Semelo ke tlhaloso ya moanelwa mo sekwalweng e bile ke dipharologantsho tse di farologanyang baanelwa ba sekwalwa. Ke ka ntlha e Wales (1989:60) a tlhalosang go tswelera pele ka go re:

Character is the fictional representation of a person belies a multiplicity and complexity of methods of characterization.

Baanelwa ke batho ba sekwalwa ba ba emelang botshelo jwa nnete. Fa a oketsa seno Cohen (1973:37) ene a re tiro ya semelo ke go tlisa

bokgabisi jwa mokwadi ka go bopa baanelwa mo pading gore mmuisi a kgone go ba itse. Ke ka moo Shole (1988:197) a reng se, se naya mokwadi tshedimosetso ka ga seemo, bogolo, moaparo, tikologo le ditlwaelo tsa moanelwa. Prince (1987:17) o tsweledisa pele kakanyo e ka go re :

Characterization can be more or less direct (a character's traits reliably stated by the narrator, the character herself, or other character) or indirect (deductive from the character's actions, reactions, thoughts, emotions etc.) it can rely on the set-piece presentation of character's main attributes.

Rationi yo, a re fa go sekasekiwa semelo se ka tlhagisiwa ke moanedi, moanelwa ka boena, kgotsa baanelwa ba bangwe. BoPeck (1984:79) bona ba ruma ka go re:

The author reveals the characters of imaginary persons. The creation of these imaginary persons is so credible that they exist for the reader as real within the limits of the FICTION is called characterisations.

Ga se moanedi, moanelwa ka boena kgotsa baanelwa ba bangwe fela ba ba tlhagisang semelo sa moanelwa yo o tlhalosiwang gore ke motho yo o ntseng jalo.

Fa go dirwa tlhotlhomiso ka ga semelo sa baanelwa ba padi e: *Omphile Umphi Modise*, go tlike go tlhokomelwa mefuta e le mebedi ya dipharologantsho tsa moakanyetso, e leng: (a) dipharologantsho tse di botlhokwa le (b) dipharologantsho tsa tlaleletso.

- **Dipharologantsho tse di botlhokwa**

Go ya ka Lebaka (1999:89) le David (2000:92) mofuta o wa dipharologantsho o tlhalosa semelo sa moanelwa ka tlhamalalo e bile o lebagane le ditheo tse pedi tsa moakanyetso, e leng:

- a) Moanelwa ke motho wa maemo/yo o tlhokang maemo le
- b) yo o nang le makoa/yo o tlhokang makoa

Ditheo tse pedi tse, di botlhokwa ka gonne di tlhalosa semelo sa moanelwa ka tlhamalalo e bile di lemosa dikarolwana tse pedi tsa ntlha tsa thulaganyo, e leng, tshenolo le phuthologo. Ditheo tsa ntlha tsa bofelo tsa moakanyetso, tsona di lebagane le setlhoa le tharabologo.

- **Dipharologantsho tsa tlaleletso**

Lekganyane (1997:90) le Lebaka (1999:90) ba re mofuta o wa dipharologantsho o tlaleletsa dipharologantsho tse di botlhokwa. O tlhagisa semelo sa moanelwa ka mokgwa o o bofitlha e bile o tlhalosa ditheo dingwe tse di rileng tsa moakanyetso. Ke dipharologantsho tse di dirisiwang go tsalanya mmuisi le moanelwa. Fa go sekasekiwa

semelo sa moanelwa go ya go tlhokomelwa ditheo tse pedi tsa ntlha tsa moakanyetso, e leng, (a) motho wa maemo a a kwa tlase le (b) motho wa makoa. Ditheo tse pedi tse, di tlile go sekasekiwa go lebeleletswe ka fa mokwadi a tlhalosang dikgang ka go akaretsa ka teng. Fa dipharologantsho tse di bonagatswa ke dithekeniki, kakanyo e e tlile go tlhalosiwa.

4.2.1. Thekeniki

Stone le Bell (1968:59) le Kerkhoff (1962:16) ba tlhalosa kgopolo e, ka go re ke seo se bonwang, seo se tla dirisiwang go tswaledisa pele se se buiwang. Ka jalo, fa go dirisiwa thekeniki mokwadi o kgona go tswaledisa pele tebaganyo (molaetsa) ya gagwe. Mojalefa (1995:128) o oketsa se ka go re:

Ke seo mongwadi a se bolelago ka go ngwala, le ka wona mokgwa woo a se boletšego ka gona ka go se ngwala 'the medium is the message'.

Ke tsela eo mokwadi a tlhagisang puo ya gagwe ka teng mo sekwalweng. Fa ba tlaleletsa kgopolo e, Lazarus le Smith (1983:288) ba re:

(It) may well become disciplinary that leads writers to discover what they have to say.

Mokwadi o e dirisa go ribolola se a batlang gore babuisi ba se itse. Groenewald (1993:17) o ruma dikgopolo tse ka go naya ditiro tseo di lebaneng le thekeniki ka go re ke:

- (a) Go gatelela, go godisa, go tiisa kgopolo ye e itsego, le
- (b) Go lebantsha kgopolo yeo le thitokgang.

Patlisiso e tlile go sekaseka ditheo tse pedi tse di builweng fa godimo ka di tla thusa mo tshalosong e.

- **Motho yo o nang le maemo a a kwa tlase.**

Fa go sekasekiwa maemo a a kwa tlase a ga molwantshiwa go tlile go latelwa lenaane le:

- (a) Puo ya mokwadi
- (b) Puo le ditiro tsa molwantshiwa
- (c) Puo le ditiro tsa baanelwa ba bangwe.

- **Molwantshiwa: Motlalepule**

- Puo ya mokwadi

Dipharologantsho tse di maleba tsa ga Motlalepule jaaka molwantshiwa tse di lebaneng le maemo a gagwe a a kwa tlase ke bontle, go tlhoka lesego, go sotlega, kutlobotlhoko le bohumanegi.

- **Bontle**

Mokwadi o tlhalosa bontle jo jwa ga Motlalepule a dirisa dithekeniki di le somepedi, e leng: tsepamiso, phapologants'ho, kgotlhang, lerui, letlhaodi, tebelelo, nyenyefatso, pheteletso, kemedi, leele, ponelopele le tshwantshanyo.

- **Tsepamiso**

Go ya ka Mojalefa (1995:11) tsepamiso ke ka fa mokwadi a bonang dikgang ka teng, le ka fa a di tlhalosang ka teng. Seno se tlhalosa go re tsepamiso *'focus'* ke tebelelo ya mokwadi.

Fa a netefatsa kgang e, Strachan (1988:42) a re:

Waaneer gebeurtenisse aangebied word, geskied dit altyd vanuit 'n bepaalde visie en dit wat gesien word, word aangedui met die term fokalisering.

Ke tsela e mokwadi a tsweledisang tebelelo ya gagwe mabapi le se a se bonang kgotsa ka go tlhagisa tiragalo ka boena.

Go tlile go tlhokomelwa ka moo Monyaise a dirisitsweng thekeniki e ka teng fa a tlhagisa bontle jwa ga Motlalepule:

Motlalepule e ne e le mosetsana yo mosetlhana, wa marata-go-lejwa, motho wa go katoga monyo, sekgatlhabadimo. Motho wa matlho a kgomo ya mmofu e jele teledimo, motho wa matlho a go

phatsimela teng e kete a geletse dikeledi, motho wa pounama tse di matlerebunyana jaaka tsa mosimane a tlwaetse go ja diphofora kwa madisong; di atisa go dira legogo, e kete o sa tswa go ja dipabe; bosetlhana jwa tsone bo oketsa bontle jwa gagwe go na le go bo fokotsa (ts.2).

Mokwadi o tlhalosa bontle jwa ga Motlalepule ka boena. Ga bo tlhalosiwe ke moanedi kgotsa baanelwa ba bangwe. Ke ena a itseng semelo sa moanelwa yo, go gaisa ba bangwe. Ka go tlhalosa bontle ka boena, Monyaise o batla go senolela babuisi bontle jo. Fa bontle bo tlhalosiwa ke motho yo o bo itseng mmuisi o amogela kang e, e le ya nnete.

Bontle bo tlhalosiwa fela, e le jwa motho wa maemo a a kwa tlase. Ga go na moo mokwadi a tlhalosang gore ke wa maemo a a kwa godimo.

Mosola wa thekeniki e, ke go godisa semelo sa ga Motlalepule.

▪ **Phapologantsho**

Fa a tlhalosa phapologantsho Cohen (1973:183) a re:

Contrast is the juxtaposition of opposite details, concepts or people.

Seno se kaya gore phapologantsho ke thekeniki e e dirisiwang go gatelela go lemosa dilo tse pedi tse di farologaneng. Serudu (1989:39) ena a re:

Phapantšho ke mokgwa wa go bapetsša diswantšho goba dikgopolo tše pedi tše di sa swanego ka nepo ya go hlaloša taba goba ditiragalo ka tsela ya maatlakgogedi.

Ditlhaloso tse, di gatelela gore go bapisiwa dikakanyo tse pedi tse di farologaneng ka maikaelelo a go tlisa kgogedi.

Monyaise a re:

(Thandi) E ne e le montlenyana wa folete, a ratwa ke botlhe. Fa Motlalepule a tsena a bona mokgele o mo tswa diatleng o tsewa ke motho a eme ka dinao. A bona bontsi jwa basetsana bo simolola go mo ila, a bona ba tswa mo tseleng ya gagwe a sa le kgakala. Nxa, a ikana. A simolola go baya dirai go mo tshelela dithupa (ts.3).

Mokwadi o farologanya bontle jwa ga Motlalepule le bontle jwa ga Thandi. Thandi ke mosetsana yo montle e bile ke mmabontle wa folete. Bommabontle jo, bo dira Thandi gore e nne wa maemo a a kwa godimo. Motlalepule o montle e bile le mokwadi o mo tlhalosa a le montle go gaisa basetsana botlhe gonne o gaisa le Thandi yo e leng mmabontle wa folete fela ke wa maemo a a kwa tlase. Bontle jo, jwa gagwe, bo mo tlišetsa matlhotlhapelo mo botshelong jotlhe jwa gagwe. Fa go bapisiwa bontle jwa ga Motlalepule le bontle jwa ga Thandi go lemogiwa pharologantsho magareng ga bona.

Ka go dirisa thekeniki e, mokwadi o tlisa kgogedi mo pading.

▪ **Kgotlhang**

Dietrich le Sundell (1967:48), Holman (1972:118), Cohen (1973:181), Brooks le ba bangwe (1975:500), Mogapi (1982:22) le Abrams (1985:159) ba tthalosa gore kgotlhang ke go tlhoka kutlwano magareng ga baanelwa ka ntlha ya mabaka a a farologaneng. Kgotlhang e e ka tlisa dintwa, dipolaano gongwe kutlobotlhoko mo baanelweng ba sekwalwa. E ka nna ka fa teng ga motho, (ke gore mo moweng wa gagwe), ka fa gare ga motho le mabaka a botshelo, kgotsa fa gare ga gagwe le tikologo e a tshelang mo go yona.

Kgotlhang e e tlleng go tlhokomelwa fa nopolong e e fa godimo, ke e e leng mo magareng ga baanelwa ba babedi, e leng: Motlalepule le Thandi. E ttholwa ke bontle jwa ga Motlalepule jo bo gaisang jwa ga Thandi. Mokwadi o tthalositse Thandi e le yo montle e bile e le mmabontle wa folete. Thandi o gakgamatswa ke go bona go tsena Motlalepule yo montle go mo gaisa. O tsenwa ke lefufa. Lefufa le, le a gola, mme kwa bokhutlong le tthagisetsa Motlalepule mathata.

Fa a dirisa thekeniki e, mokwadi o godisa morero wa padi e wa matlhotlhapelo.

▪ **Lerui**

Mokoena (1998:147) o tthalosa kgopolo e, ka go re:

The possessive is a word which qualifies a noun.

Ke lefoko le le tlaolang leina mo polelong. Cole (1952:159), Matseke (1968:36), Ntsime le Krüger (1988:187) le boSnyman (1980:68) ba tsweledisa pele kakanyo e ka go re ga le na dikutu tsa tlholego di le dintsi. Dikutu tsa tlholego tse di kayang serui ke tsa tlholego tse di kayang serui ke tsa mmui, mmuisiwa le mmuiwa mo bongweng fela jaaka:-me/ - ka, gago le gagwe. Go dikutu tsa tlholego tse di kayang thuo ya tlhakanelo ya balosika tsa fa serui e le mmui, mmuisiwa le mmuiwa, jaaka; -tsho, eno le gabo. Kutu ya lerui ya tlholego e ruangwa le leina la se se ruilweng ka thuanani ya lerui.

Monyaise a re:

Motlalepule e ne e le mosetsana yo mosetlhana, wa marata-go-lejwa, motho wa go katoga monyo, sekgatlhabadimo. Motho wa matlho a kgomo ya mmofu e jele teledimo, motho wa matlho a go phatsimela teng e kete a geletse dikeledi, motho wa pounama tse di matlerebunyana jaaka tsa mosimane a tlwaetse go ja diphofora kwa madisong...(ts.2).

Go tswa mo nopolong e, mokwadi o dirisa thuanirui 'wa' go tlaola Motlalepule jaaka mosetsana yo montle. Go gatelela tlaolo e ka thuanirui e, o dirisitse dipopi tsa lerui, e leng: serui/leinarui- motho; thuanirui-wa, le kuturui/seruiwa-marata- go- lejwa. Fa go ka lebelelwa puo e, go tla tlhokomelwa gore 'wa' e dirisitswe gatlhano go

tlisa kgatelelo ya gore Motlalepule o montle. Ka jalo, thekeniki e, e dirisetswa go gatelela go tlhagisa bontle jwa ga Motlalepule.

▪ **Letlhaodi**

Mokoena (1998:119) o tthalosa letlhaodi ka go re:

An adjective is a word that qualifies a noun. This means that the adjective explains the nature or function of the noun in a sentence.

Letlhaodi ke lefoko le le tthaolang leina mo polelong. Lediri ke lona le bontshang tiro ya leina. Cole (1952:138), Wookey (1952:67) le Matseke (1968:119) ba tthalosa popego ya letlhaodi ka go re le na le dikutu tsa tlhago fela. Se se raya gore matlhaodi ga a bopiwa mo dikutung tsa dikarolo tse dingwe tsa puo. Dikutu –golo; -khutshwane; -setlhana; -hibidu; -ntsho; -raro, jalo le jalo. Ke dikutu tsa tlhago tsa matlhaodi ka gonne ga se tsa dikarolo tse dingwe tsa puo. Kutu ya letlhaodi e tlhongwa tlhogo ya leina le le tthaolwang. Go riana letlhaodi le bopiwa ka tlhogo ya leina le le tthaolwang le kutu ya letlhaodi. Leamanyi le lona jaaka letlhaodi le bopiwa ka lesupi la maemo a ntlha le thuanani ya sediri mmogo le kutu ya leamanyi. Sekao: yo o bogale. Yo- lesupi, o – thuananisediri; -bogale – kutu ya leamanyi.

Monyaise a re:

Motlalepule e ne e le mosetsana ‘yo mosetlhana’... (ts.2).

Go tswa mo nopolong e, mokwadi o dirisa letlhaodi yo mosetlhana go tlhaola leina Motlalepule. Letlhaodi le, le na le tiro gonne le lemosa mmuisi mmala wa ga Motlalepule ka a le mosetlhana go gaisa basetsana ba bangwe. O dirisa letlhaodi la mmala go gatelela bontle jwa ga Motlalepule.

Letlhaodi la mmala le le dirisitseng le ka lokolwa jaana: lesupi la maemo a ntlha –yo; tlhogo ya leina –mo-(thuanyitlhaodi) le kutu ya letlhaodi la tlhago/mmala –setlhana; go bopa yo mosetlhana. Fa go sekasekiwa puo e, go tla lemogiwa gore mokwadi o dirisa thekeniki ya letlhaodi go gatelela bontle jwa ga Motlalepule. Ke go re Motlalepule o montle go gaisa basetsana ba bangwe.

▪ Tshwantshanyo

Serudu (1989:51) a re tshwantshanyo ke sekapuo se ka sona selo se tshwantshanngwang le se sengwe. Kgang kgolo e le go bopa setshwantsho se mmuisi a ka se bonang sentle ka leitlho la kakanyo. Sekapuo se, se lemogiwa ka mafoko a: jaaka, tshwana le, le e kete.

Holman (1936:498) a re ke:

A figure of speech in which a similarity between two objects is directly expressed.

Boratoriori ba, ba tlhalosa gore go tshwantshanngwa dilo tse pedi tse di sa tshwaneng go naya kakanyo e le nngwe.

Monyaise a re:

(Motlalepule) motho wa pounama tse di matlerebunyana jaaka tsa mosimane a tlwaetse go ja diphofora kwa madisong, di atisa go dira legogo, e kete o sa tswa go ja dipabe, bosetlhana jwa tsone bo oketsa bontle jwa gagwe, go na le go bo fokotsa (ts.2).

Fano mokwadi o bapisa dilo tse pedi tse di sa tshwaneng, e leng, dipounama tsa ga Motlalepule le dipounama tsa mosimane kwa madisong. Dipounama tsa mosimane yo, di na le legogo le le tlholwang ke go ja diphofora tse di omeletseng, le dipabe tseo di mo tshasang ka molora go di setlhefatsa. Mosimane o tlhola motshegare otlhe ka dipounama tse di nang le legogo le le setlhefetseng gonne kwa nageng go se na metsi a mantsi go ka di phepafatsa.

Go tswelala pele mokwadi o dirisa mafoko a: jaaka le e kete, go tshwantshanya dipounama tsa baanelwa ba babedi ba ba farologaneng. Ka go tshwantshanngwa ga dipounama tse, mokwadi o batla gore mmuisi a bone dipounama tse dikima, tse di nang le legogo le lesetlhana tsa ga Motlalepule mo monaganong wa gagwe. Dipounama tse, ga di mo rone di a mo tshwanela, mme di oketsa bontle jwa gagwe. Go raya gore Motlalepule o montlentle go gaisa basetsana ba bangwe. Ka go dirisa thekeniki e, mokwadi o godisa bontle jwa ga Motlalepule.

Monyaise o bapisa dipounama tsa ga Motlalepule le tsa mosimane yo o kwa madisong. O bapisa dipounama tsa batho ba babedi ba ba farologaneng. Ka tsela e, fa mokwadi a bapisa mosadi le monna go raya gore mosadi yo o mobe (bifile). Ka go rialo Motlalepule o bifile. Go bifa ga gagwe go mo dipounameng; le fa go ntse jalo di a mo tshwanela. Ke yo montle gonne o tshwanelwa ke dithwe tsa gagwe. Ka tsela e, Motlalepule o montle go gaisa basetsana ba bangwe. Mokwadi fa a kwala ka tsela e, o dirisa thekeniki ya pharologantsho.

▪ Tebelelo

Serudu (1992:45) a re tebelelo ke tsela e e gatelelang fela se se buiwang ke moanedi wa pele. Motlhagisakgang e ka nna mokwadi ka boena kgotsa a dirisa mongwe wa baanelwabagolo ba gagwe go anela kgang eo. Abrams (1981:144) ena o bua ka go re:

This mode, as it is consistently carried out, naturally limits the point of view to what the first person narrator himself knows, experiences, infers, or can find out by talking to other characters. We distinguish between narrative 'I' who is a fortuitous witness of the matters he relates, or who is a minor or peripheral participant in the story; or who is himself the central character in the story.

Puo e, ya ga Abrams e tlhalosa gore tebelelo e na le mefuta e e rileng, e ka nna tebelelo ya mokwadi, moanedi e le motho wa ntlha, wa bobedi, wa boraro le boanedi ka kakaretso.

Monyaise a re:

E ne e le maitseboa, ke emetse tshutshumakgala ya Ditsobotla, ke ne ke sa tlhole ke ya gae, Gouteng ya Mamelodi e nkgapile pelo. Fa ke ntse ke eme jaana, ka bona mosetsana (Motlalepule) yo mosetlhana, motho wa marata-go-lejwa, a ntse a gadimaka e kete o latlhegetswe ke sengwe. Ka ithaya ka re nka mo itse... (ts.1).

Go tlhagisa bontle jwa ga Motlalepule, mokwadi o dirisitse thekeniki ya tebelelo ya moanedi e le motho wa ntlha. Dikgang tse, tsa bontle di tla ka leitlho la moanedi. Ga di tle ka mokwadi kgotsa baanelwa ba bangwe. Mokwadi o dirisitse moanedi e le motho wa ntlha go tlhalosa semelo sa ga Motlalepule, gonne ke ena yo o itseng moanelwa yo go gaisa botlhe. Monyaise o lemoga gore yo o itseng bontle jwa ga Motlalepule go gaisa baanelwa ba ba tshelang le ene, ke moanedi yo e leng motho wa ntlha. Mokwadi o godisa bontle jwa ga Motlalepule ka go tlhalosa ka mongwe yo o bo itseng go gaisa ba bangwe. Ka go rulaganya dikgang ka tsela e, ga twe go dirisitswe thekeniki ya sebui kgotsa ya motho wa ntlha.

▪ Nyenyefatso

Makopo le ba bangwe (1989:260) boMoto (1990:57), boSnyman (1990:9) le Cole (1992:105) ba re nyenyefatso ke mofuta o o rileng wa leina le le bontshang bonnye ba dilo tse di tshelang le tse di sa tsheleng, bonyana (go se felelele go gola), tlontlololo le lerato. E bonala ka megatlana e mebedi e e farologaneng, e leng: -ana le -nyana. Setshedi (1980:29) o tswelela pele ka kgopolo e ka go re mogatlana o sentle ga o kae ngotlo ya maina fela. O kaya maikutlo a mmui a nang nao tebang le selo se a buang ka ga sona kgotsa selo se a buang le sona. Maikutlo a a ikaeletsweng a tlhagelela fela fa nyenyefatso e dirisitswe mo polelong.

Monyaise a re:

Fa ke ntse ke eme jaana, ka bona mosetsana
(Motlalepule) yo mosetlhana, motho wa marata-
go-lejwa... (ts.1).

Go tswa fa puong e, mokwadi o dirisitse nyenyefatso ya leinakgopolo **mosetlhana** ka mogatlana **-ana**. Ka go dirisa nyenyefatso e, mokwadi ga a supe lonyatso, tlontlololo kgotsa bonnye, o supa lorato. Go raya gore Motlalepule ke yo montlentle. Ka go dirisa thekeniki e, mokwadi o godisa bontle jwa ga Motlalepule.

▪ Pheteletso

Serudu (1989:39) o tlhalosa pheteletso jaaka sekapuo se mo go sona mokwadi a godisang boemo jwa selo go feta ka moo bo itsiweng ka

teng. Maikaelelo e le go gatelela botlhokwa jwa kang e e tsweledisiwang pele. Preminger le ba bangwe (1965:90) ba netefatsa se ka go re:

...an elegant straining of truth, and may be employed indifferently for exaggeration or attenuation... Any extravagant statement used to express strong emotion, not intended to be understood literally.

Boratori ba, ba tihalosa gore pheteletso ke thekeniki e e tlotlomatsang dikgang go tlhagisa maikutlo a a tseneletseng.

Monyaise a re:

'fatlhego se hupile manyaapelo (ts.5)

Fa go lekolwa nopolo e gape, go lemogiwa gore mokwadi o tihalosa sefatlhego se se hupileng manyaapelo. Ka tshwanelo ga go hupe sefatlhego go hupa molomo. Molomo o fetwa ke sefatlhego ka bogolo e bile ke karolo ya sefatlhego. Fa mokwadi a ka bo a dirisitswe molomo, go tihalosa tiragalo e, ya go hupa, kang e e ne e ka se feteletswe. Mokwadi o dirisa sefatlhego se segolo go godisa dikgang le go tlhagisa maikutlo a a tseneletseng.

Gape o dirisa go hupa ga sefatlhego, go lemosa mmuisi kgarakgatshego ya maemo a ga Motlalepule e e lebaganeng le matlhotlhapelo. Ka tsela e, mokwadi o dirisa thekeniki e, go godisa morero wa matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule mo pading e.

Go tla lemogiwa gape gore ka fa gare ga thekeniki e ya pheteletso, go tlhagelela thekeniki e nngwe gape ya kemedi.

- **Kemedi**

Serudu (1989:29); Yelland le ba bangwe (1983:187) ba re kemedi ke sekapuo se mo go sona karolo ya selo e emelang selo ka botlalo. Ka tsela e, mmuisi o kgona go utlwisisa selo se sengwe fa go buiwa ka karolo e. Shipley (1972:322) o netefatsa kgang e ka go re:

...The representation of a reality on one level of reference by a corresponding reality on another. It is a form of indirect metaphorical speech meant to carry or suggest a hidden reality.

Thekeniki e, e tshwantshanya dikgang ka mokgwa o o bofitlha, ka karolwana e e emelang selo se segolo.

Mokwadi o dirisa thekeniki, ka go re:

'fatlhego se hupile manyaapelo (ts.5).

Sefatlhego se se hupileng manyaapelo, se emetse dikarolo tsotlhe tsa mmele tse di kgonang go tlhagisa matlhotlhapelo. Dikarolo tse di lemosang matlhotlhapelo e ka nna molomo le mmele otlhe. Ka tsona dithwe tse, moanelwa o kgona go bontsha matlhotlhapelo.

Motho a ka goga maoto, go supa fa a wele mowa. Matlho a a hibitseng a sekile dikeledi, molomo o o roromang le ona o senola go se itumele. Ka jalo, diponagalo tse tsa mmele di senola semelo sa ga Motlalepule jaaka motho yo o mo matlhokong. Ka tsela e, thekeniki e, e gatelela matlhotlhapelo, e leng, thitokgang ya kanedi e.

- **Leele**

Fa a tlhalosa leele Baldick (1990:106) a re:

... is a phrase or grammatical construction that cannot be translated literally into another language because its meaning is not equivalent to that of its component words... By extension, the term is sometimes applied more loosely to any style or manner of writing that is characteristic of particular group of movement.

Puo e, e tlhalosa gore leele ke thekeniki e e buang ka go tshwantsha. Ga se puo e e tlwaelegileng ya ka metlha, ke puo e e bofitlha. Mokwadi o dirisa leele go ngoka mmuisi go lemoga se se botlhokwa.

Fa a dirisa thekeniki e, Monyaise a re:

Morago ga sebaka se seleele, mosetsana (Motlalepule) a tswa a le esi, **'fatlhego se hupile manyaapelo** (ts.5).

Leele le le dirisitsweng ke Monyaise mo nopolong e, ke **go hupa manyaapelo.**

Puo e, e tshwantshanya sefatlhego le bosula. Tlhaloso ya sefatlhego se se hupileng manyaapelo e bontsha gore ga se sefatlhego se se tletseng boitumelo. Ke sefatlhego se se senolang matlhotlhapelo.

Fa mokwadi a kwala ka tsela e, o dirisa puo e e bofitlha gonne ga a tlhalose dikgang ka tlhamalalo, a re: Sefatlhego se hupile manyaapelo. Go hupa go kaya go tsenya selo ka fa ganong ka maikaelelo a go ja kgotsa go nwa. Ka tsela e, mokwadi o dirisa thekeniki go gatelela morero wa matlhotlhapelo a a tlhagetseng Motlalepule.

Jaanong go ya go tlhokomelwa thekeniki e nngwe gape e e tlhagisiwang ke thekeniki e, ya leele, e leng, ponelopele.

▪ **Ponelopele**

Brooks le ba bangwe (1975:884), Cohen (1973:185) le Serudu (1989:45) ba tlhalosa **ponelopele** ka go re ke thekeniki e mokwadi a e dirisang fa a rata go tlhagisa se se tlileng go diragala mo tsamaong ya ditiragalo tsa buka kgotsa go lemosa go le gonnye ditiragalo tse di tlileng go diragala kwa pejana mo pading ya gagwe.

Go ya ka Mosehla (2000:113) thekeniki e ya ponelopele e bonagala ka go dirisa mekgwa e e farologaneng mo setlhangweng jaaka toro, ngaka ya ditaola, moporofeti, segakolodi, puo ya moanelwa kgotsa mokwadi

ka boena go sedimosa se se tlleng go diragala kwa pele. Dietritch le ba bangwe (1976:117) ba re:

The device of foreshadowing aids the plot in so far as it causes otherwise insignificant events or details at the present to take on value by being indicators of future events.

Fa nopolong e e fa godimo, mokwadi o bua ka sefatlhego se se tletseng manyaapelo. Sona sefatlhego se, se senola matlhotlhapelo a a tlleng go wela Motlalepule kwa pele. Sefatlhego se, se lemosa mmuisi gore Motlalepule ke motho yo o tlleng go welwa ke mathata botshelo jotlhe jwa gagwe.

Mathata a, a ga Motlalepule, a tlolwa ke go fitlha sephiri sa gore o na le morwa wa dikgora. Sephiri se, se mo tlolela bolwetse jo bo mmolayang kwa bokhutlong.

Mokwadi o dirisitse thekeniki e, go tthagisa morero wa matlhotlhapelo a a welang Motlalepule mo pading.

- **Go tlhoka lesego**

Monyaise o dirisitswe kakanyo e ya go tlhoka lesego ga Motlalepule ka go dirisa dithekeniki di le thataro, e leng: **ponelopele, tshotlo, phapologantshe, mothofatso, tshwantshanyo le tlogelo.**

▪ Ponelepe

Ka gonne thekeniki e, e setse e tthalositswe mo tsebeng e e fa godimo go ya go lebelelwa ka moo mokwadi a e dirisitsweng ka teng:

Motlalepule e ne e le mosetsana yo mosetlhana, wa marata-go-lejwa...Fa o mo etse tlhoko a itebetse, 'fatlhego sa gagwe se tletse manyaapelo jaaka sa motho a tla di golela (ts.2).

Mokwadi o dirisitswe popego ya sefatlhego sa ga Motlalepule go tlhagisa se se tlileng go diragala kwa bokhutlong. Tebego e, ya sefatlhego e lemosa mmuisi gore go tlele go diragala sengwe se se utlwisang botlhoko thata kwa pele. Sefatlhego se sentle se, se se ka bong se tliša dilo tse di siameng, jaanong se tliša botlhoko ka go kaiwa se tletse manyaapelo. Ka jalo, mmuisi ga a solofele go bona Motlalepule yo o itumetseng, yo sefatlhego sa gagwe se tletseng boitumelo. Se se solofetsweng ke manyaapelo a a tlileng go mo wela. Bontle jwa gagwe bo upolola go nna madimabe ga gagwe go go tlileng go mo diragalela ka go imisiwa ngwana wa leitibolo, Omphile (ts.2).

Thekeniki e, mokwadi o e dirisitse go tlhagisa morero wa matlhotlhapelo mo pading e.

▪ Tshotlo

Serudu (1989:29) a re tshotlo ke sekapuo se se sotlang go tswelatsa pele lonyatso. Sekapuo se, se farologana le sa kobiso gonne mo go

sona mokwadi o dirisa mafoko a tlhaloso ya one e farologaneng le a kobiso gonne mo go sona mokwadi o dirisa mafoko a tlhaloso ya one e farologaneng le tlhaloso e a ratang gore mmuisi a e bone. Yelland le ba bangwe (1983:66) ba netefatsa se ka go re:

Satire is a composition in which human frailty is held up to ridicule. It is comic rather than tragic and is written in a mood of scornful amusement at human weakness and foibles, at knavery and folly.

Puo e, e kaya gore thekeniki ya tshotlo ke tsela ya go ripitlanya seriti sa motho ka tiriso ya puo e e senolang boeleele jwa motho yo o sotliwang.

Monyaise o dirisitse thekeniki e fa a re:

Setlhako sa mosetsana (Motlalepule) sa nao la molema se tlogela mpa ya lonao mo a gatileng gone (ts.4).

Mokwadi o dirisitse mafoko a a utlwisang bothoko go senola ka mo Motlalepule a nyatsegileng le go nyenyefatswa ka teng. O a nyenyefatswa gonne o humanegile. Go humanega ga gagwe, go dira gore a se ke a amogelwa le go ratwa ke batho ba bangwe jaaka basetsana ba Lakasanta, Thandi le mosimane wa tedu tsa katse. Se se lemosa mmuisi gore Motlalepule ke motho yo o tlhokang maemo gonne o rwele setlhako se se onetseng se se bipileng ka fa godimo fela. Kgang e, e bontsha gore Motlalepule ke motho yo o sotlegileng. Batho

ba a mo tshega ka a sotlegile. Mmuisi ene, ga a tshege, o mo utlwela bothoko gonne o a itse gore Motlalepule ga a itire e bile o siame. Go siama mo ga Motlalepule, go tihola botsalano magareng ga gagwe le mmuisi.

Mokwadi o dirisitse thekeniki ya tshotlo go gatelela morero wa matlhotlhapelo mo sekwalweng sa gagwe ka go tthalosa ditiragalo tsa go sotlwa ga Motlalepule ka setlhako se se onetseng.

- **Mothofatso**

Beckson le Ganz (1961:162) ba tthalosa gore mothofatso ke:

A figure of speech in which inanimate objects or abstract ideas are endowed with human qualities or actions.

Sekapuo se, se tlhagisa mowa wa maikutlo a setho mo dilong tse di sa tsheleng. Serudu (1981:35) ene a re ke sekapuo se mo go sona dilo tse di sa tsheleng di mothofadiwa go newa dimelo tsotlhe tse di farologanyang motho mo dilong tse dingwe tse di tshelang le tse di sa tsheleng.

Monyaise o dirisitse thekeniki e fa a re:

Mogodungwana wa simolola tiro ya one, morago ga sebakanyana, a thulamela... Mo mosong a

tsoga a palelwa, a kgobegile marapo a otswa ke tlhogo, a feroga dibete (ts.4).

Selo se se sa tsheleng, mogodungwana, se mothofaditswe. Mogodungwana ke tee e e bolelo kgotsa moro wa mateng a apeilwe. Ga e sa tlhole e le selo se se kaiwang jaaka pele. Ka go rulaganya dikgang ka tsela e, mokwadi o pateletsa mmuisi gore a amogele setshwantsho se a se tlhagisang ka go bapisa tee le seritibatsi. Tiro eo ya mogodungwana ke go robatsa Motlalepule fela jaaka mmaagwe lesea a le robatsa ka go le antsha letsele. Mogodungwana o tshwantshangwa le mašwi a mmaagwe lesea, gonne tsoopedi di dira tiro e le nngwe e e tshwanang, e leng, go robatsa. Ka fa letlhakoreng le lengwe Motlalepule o tshwantshangwa le lesea. Bobedi jwa bone bo robatswa bonolo ka go neelwa seno e ka nna mogodungwana kgotsa mekgatho.

Tiragalo e ya go robatsa motho ka kgapeletso a sa rate ke yona e e godisang matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule gonne kwa bofelong go bonala a kgaotswe leoto ke lekau le le tedu tsa katse, ke go re o ne a betelelwa, mme a feleletsa a imile e bile a bo a tshagofatswa ka mosimanyana yo o neng a mo thaya leina la Omphile.

▪ **Tshwantshanyo**

Jaanong go ile go lebelelwa ka foo Monyaise a dirisitsweng tshwantshanyo ka teng fa a rulaganya dikgang tsa go tlhalosa semelo sa ga Motlalepule malebana le go tlhoka lesego ga gagwe. Mokwadi o gatelela tshwantshanyo ka go re:

...’fatlhego sa gagwe se tletse manyaapelo jaaka sa motho a tla di golela (ts.4).

Monyaise o tshwantshanya dilo tse pedi, e leng: (a) sefatlhego se sentle (sa ga Motlalepule) le (b) sefatlhego sa motho yo o tla di golelang (moanelwa yo mongwe). Jaanong ditebego tsa difatlhego tse pedi di tla bapisiwa. Mo papisong go lemogiwa gore sefatlhego se, sa ga Motlalepule se bapisiwa le sefatlhego sa mongwe yo o di goletseng. Ka go dirisa thekeniki e, mmuisi o lemoga maemo a Motlalepule a leng mo go ona, a a tobekaneng, a mongwe yo montle fela a hupile bogalaka jwa kutlobotlhoko. Ka ntlha ya maemo a a ntseng jaana a mokwadi o a tlhagisang, mmuisi o pateletsega go fisegela go itse gore tota kwa pele go ya go diragala eng. Ke go re Motlalepule o ya go diragalelwa ke eng fa ditiragalo tsa buka di ntse di thathologa.

▪ Tlogelo

Hornby (1963:280) fa a tlhalosa tlogelo a re:

Elision is the leaving out of words, ideas or syllables in pronunciation...

O tlhalosa gore ka tlogelo go ka tlogelwa lefoko kgotsa kakanyo e e itsiweng, Groenewald (1993: 26) ena o tlhalosa fa tlogelo e le thekeniki e ka yona mokwadi a kgonang go tsamaisa nako ya ditiragalo tsa sekwalwa sa gagwe ka bonako. Mokwadi o tlogela tse dingwe tsa ditiragalo, ga a di bue tsotlhe. Tota ga twe mokwadi o

tlogelela mmuisi dikgala kgotsa diphatlha tse di tshwanetseng go tlatswa ke mmuisi yoo.

Mokwadi o dirisitse thekeniki e, ya tlogelo fa a re:

A thulamela ... mo mosong a tsoga a palelwa,
a kgobegile marapo, a otswa ke tlhogo, a feroga
dibete (ts.4).

Monyaise o tlhalositse tiragalo ya ntlha, e leng, go thulamela ga Motlalepule. Tiragalo e, ya bobedi, e leng, go betelwa ga Motlalepule, mokwadi o e tlogetse ka ntlha ya (a) gore mmuisi a ikakanyetse yona le (b) go potlakisa nako ya ditigalo le go tshaba go rogana.

▪ **Gore mmuisi a ikakanyetse yona**

Tiragalo e ya bobedi, e leng, go betelwa ga Motlalepule, mokwadi o e tlogetse a tlhalosa tiragalo ya boraro, e leng, go tsoga a palelwa. Tiragalo e e diragaletseng Motlalepule a thulametse mokwadi ga a e tlhalose gonne a solofela gore mmuisi o a e itse. Le fa tiragalo e, e tlogetswe, mokwadi o a itse gore mmuisi o tla itse ka ga yona, gonne tatelano ya ditiragalo e lemosa mmuisi gore Motlalepule o ne a betelwa gonne go ise go ye kae, Motlalepule o kaiwa a isa lesea kwa tlhokomelong ya bana. O tlogela tiragalo e ka maikaelelo a go bopa kgogedi. Ka jalo, o tlogela tiragalo eo ntswa e le botlhokwa gonne e

lebagane le phisegelo ya mmuisi. Ka jalo, mmuisi o tla batla go buisetsa pele ka ntlha ya tlogelo eo.

▪ **Go potlakisa nako ya ditiragalo**

Mokwadi o tswelela pele a potlakisa nako ka go tlogela tiragalo ya go betelwa ga Motlalepule. Tiragalo e, e e tlogetsweng e a itsiwe ka gone mmuisi a ka se nne le bothata jwa go lemoga tiragalo e le fa gona e tlogetswe. Tiragalo e e tlogetsweng e, e tlogetswe ka e le masisi. Fa go tlhokomelwa sentle go tla lemogiwa sentle gore maikaelelo a gagwe ke go ngoka mmuisi ka go tlogela dikgang tse di masisi jaaka tse. Se se gatelelwang fa ke gore mokwadi o tlogela ditiragalo di ntse di le botlhokwa go leka go gatelela se se rileng mo thulaganyong ya dikgang tsa gagwe.

Go tla lemogiwa gore tiragalo e, e tlogetswe ke mokwadi go potlakisa nako, mme gona mmuisi o tla e lemoga bonolo le fa e tlogetswe. Mmuisi o tla ipotsa potso ya gore lesea le Motlalepule a le isang kwa tlhokomelong ya bana ke la ga mang e bile le tswa kae. Ee, go mo pepeneneng gore lesea ke la gagwe, mme ka jalo tlogelo e, e tlhola kgogedi e kgolo mo mmuising. Ke ka tsela eo mokwadi a potlakisang dikgang tsa matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule ka teng.

Gape go tla lemogiwa gore e kete mokwadi o tlhalosa dikgang tsa go betelwa ga Motlalepule ka tsela ya go iphitlha. O tlogela tiragalo e, ya go lebagana le bosula ka mokgwa wa tlhompho. Ke go re ka go tlotla Motlalepule, o mo utlwela botlhoko. O mo tlhomogela pelo ka

ntlha ya se se mo diragaletseng, e leng, tiragalo e e maswe ya go betelelwa.

Monyaise o dirisa thekeniki e, go godisa matlhotlhapelo a a tlhagetseng Motlalepule gore a bonagale sentle mo matlhong a mmuisi.

▪ **Phapologantsho (nngwe e ya kwa nngwe kwa)**

Fa go tlhokomelwa nopollo e e fa godimo e, go tla lemogiwa gore Monyaise o dirisitse gape thekeniki ya phapologantsho. Thekeniki e, e gatelela go farologannngwa ga dilo tse pedi tse di sa tsamaelaneng, e leng: bontle le manyaapelo. Monyaise o tswela pele ka go tlhalosa sefatlhego se se tletseng manyaapelo. Sona sefatlhego se, se tshwana le sa motho a tla di golela. Tsiboso e, ya sefatlhego se sentle, se se tletseng manyaapelo e lemosa mmuisi matlhotlhapelo a a tlileng go wela Motlalepule kwa bokhutlong jwa padi e. Gantsi mmuisi a ka akanya gore selo se ka simolola ka bontle, sa tswela pele jalo, mme sa khutla ka bona bontle joo. Ka tsela e, mokwadi o gakolola mmuisi gore ga se gantsi bontle bo simololang ka tshiamo, mme bo felele ka tshiamo. Go a kgonega gore bo simolole ka tshiamo, mme bo felelele ka matlhotlhapelo.

Thekeniki e, e lebagane le morero wa padi e, e leng, matlhotlhapelo.

▪ **Tshwantshanyo**

Thekeniki e, e setse e tlhalositswe, gore go tshwantshanngwa dilo tse pedi go senola kgopolo e le nngwe. Monyaise o tshwantshanya

sefatlhego se sentle (selo sa ntlha) le sefatlhego sa motho yo o tla di golelang (selo sa bobedi).

- **Go sotlega**

Monyaise o dirisitswe kakanyo e ya go sotlega ga Motlalepule ka go dirisa dithekeniki tse di somenngwe, e leng: **sekai, tshotlo, motifi, mmuaesi** (o buela mo pelong), **poeletso, leele, kobiso, seane, phapologantsho, tshwantshanyo le pheteletso.**

- **Sekai**

Fa a tlhalosa sekai Abrams (1985:184) a re:

The term symbol is applied only to a word or phrase that signifies an object or event which in turn signifies something or has a range of reference beyond itself.

Puo e, e tlhalosa fa sekai e le kemedi ya selo kgotsa tiragalo e mokwadi a ipopelang yona go anela ka go tshwantsha dikgang tsa gagwe. Serudu (1989:42) ena o netefatsa se, ka go re ke lefoko kgotsa polelwana e e supang sengwe, mme e bile fa e le lefoko le ka nna le ditlhaloso tse dintsi.

Monyaise o dirisitse thekeniki e, fa a re:

Ba (MmaSebolai le Motlalepule a belege ngwana) tlhatloga mokong, ba fitlha ba ema fa pele ga ntlo e bonesitswe ka pone – ditalana ka fa ntle. Fa ba sena go nna ba kabakanya ka sebaka se seleele, ga tswa mosetsana wa mooki mo segotlong sa ntlo e. Ya re a ba bona, a nyenya (ts.4).

Fa go buisiwa nopollo e, ka kelotlhoko go tla tlhokomelwa gore ntlo le baoki ke dikai tsa tshireletso ya lesea (Omphile). Ntlo e, e agetswe go tlhokomela le go godisa bana ba ba se nang batsadi. Ka fa gare ga ntlo e, go na le baoki ba ba tlhokomelang bana bao. Ka jalo, ba godisa lesea le. Mmaagwe lesea (Motlalepule) le mmuisi ba amogela legae le, gonne e le le le siametseng tiro ya go godisa lesea (Omphile). Le fa go ntse jalo, go na le tshotlego e e tlhagisiwang ke sekai se, ka ntlha ya maemo a lesea le iphitlhelang le le mo go ona. Mmuisi ga a batle gore lesea le arogannwe le mmaagwe lona.

Ka jalo, Monyaise o dirisa thekeniki e, go godisa matlhotlhapelo a a rulaganyang go tswaledisa pele molaetsa wa gagwe, e leng, matlhotlhapelo a a wetseng Motlalepule mo botshelong jwa gagwe.

▪ **Tshotlo**

Thekeniki e, e setse e tlhalositswe ka gore ke sekapuo se se sotlang go tswaledisa pele lonyatso. Sekapuo se, se farologane le sa kobiso gonne mo go sona o dirisa mafoko a tlhaloso ya one e farologaneng le tlhaloso e a ratang gore mmuisi a e bone.

Motlalepule o isa lesea kwa ntlokgodisetsong ya bana. Ga a mo ise kwa gae gonne a tlile morago ga tiragalo e e botlhoko, ya matlhotlhapelo le go tllhabisa ditlhong, e leng, petelelo.

Go tlwaelegile gore fa mosadi a ka betelelwa, o ya kwa ngakeng go ya go phepafadiwa popelo morago ga petelelo eo. O tshwanela go ima lesea le a sa le rateng dikgwedi di le robongwe.

Ka ntlha ya go tlhoka thuso, Motlalepule o ima lesea la ga mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse. Motlalepule o nna mo makgatllhanong a ditsela. O nna le dikakanyo di le pedi, ya go bolaya kgotsa ya gore lesea le tshele. O ne a ka bolaya ka go ntsha mpa eo. Ene o itlhophela ya gore lesea le tshele, ka ntlha ya fa a le utlwela botlhoko. Ke ka ntlha e a le belegang, mme morago a le ise kwa ntlokgodisetsong ya bana.

Maikaelelo a go mo isa kwa ntlokgodisetsong ya bana ke gore a se tlhole a mmona gonne (a) o tla nna a mo gopotsa tiragalo e mpe eo, ya mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse, yo o mmeteletseng, le gore (b) ga a mo tsaya jaaka ngwana wa gagwe gonne o mo imile ka petelelo. Le fa lesea le, a sa le bone jaaka ngwana wa gagwe, e le wa motho yo o mo tlhoileng, e leng, mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse, o batla gore le tshele. Ke ka ntlha e a mmayang mo diatleng tse di bothito tsa polokesego. Ka tsela e o tlhompha botshelo.

Mmuisi o amogela mathata a a tlhagetseng Motlalepule, e bile o mo utlwela botlhoko ka gonne le ena a ka mo diragalela. Mathata a, ga se a Motlalepule a itiretseng ona. O a dirisitswe ke motho yo mongwe ka kgapeletso le dikgoka. Ka ntlha e, mmuisi o mo utlwela botlhoko e bile o ikamanya le ena.

Ka go rulaganya dikgang ka tsela e, mokwadi o dirisitswe thekeniki ya tshotlo. Thekeniki e, e dirisitswe jaana go godisa morero wa matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule mo pading e.

▪ **Mmuaesi (o buela mo pelong)**

Beckson le Ganz (1960:202) ba tlhalosa kgotlhang ya ka fa gare ka go re ke:

...is a technique for the depiction of the thoughts and feelings which flows with no apparent and logic through the mind of the character.

Ke thekeniki e e bontshang tlhakatlhakano ya maikutlo mo tlhaloganyong ya moanelwa. Baldick (1990:212) ena o netefatsa se ka go re ke:

...is a continuous flow of sense-perceptions, thoughts, feelings, and memories in the humans mind; or a literally method of representing such a blending of mental process in fictional characters, usually in an unpunctuated or disjointed form of interior monologue.

Thekeniki e, e senola maikutlo a a boteng a moanelwa ka tsela ya mmuaesi ya go logaganya dikakanyo. Dikakanyo le monagano ke

tsona di logaganyang dikgopolo tse e keteng di phatlaletse go nna selo se le sengwe.

Monyaise o dirisa thekeniki e, fa a re:

Mma-Mosidi a nna pelopedi: **bolelela mogatso se ipolae ka mabogo** (ts.8).

Go tla tlhokomelwa gore karolo ya polelo e e ntshofaditsweng ka fa godimo e tlhalosa gore go na le motho yo o buang a le esi, ka ntlha ya tlhakatlhakano ya maikutlo. O boifa go senolela Rra-Mosidi sephiri sa gore o na le morwa wa dikgora. Dikakanyo le dikgakololo tsa gagwe di a phatlalala gonne ke tse dintsi. Mo magareng ga dikakanyo tse go balwa le tse di latelang, go senolela mogatse sephiri sa gore o na le morwa wa dikgora; go batla morwa Omphile kwa ntlokgodisetsong e a mo isitseng kwa go yona. Ka ntlha ya go tlhoka bonno le motho yo o mo thusang, le go tshosiwa ke ditlamorago tsa go senola sephiri gonne e ka nna ya amogelwa kgotsa go se amogelwe ke Rra-Mosidi, o bona go le botoka go swa senku.

Dikakanyo tsotlhe tse, ke mathata a a leng mo go ena, mme di golaganngwa ke kakanyo e kgolo, e leng, go tshola sephiri. Kgopolo ya go boifa gore a ka latlhegelwa ke monna le legae, e kgobokanya dikakanyo le dikgakololo tse di tlhakatlhakaneng tsa go senola sephiri. O ikanya go hupa tedu, go tlhopha loso go na le botshelo, gonne sephiri se, se mo tlholela bolwetse jo bo mmolayang kwa bokhutlong. Ka go dirisa thekeniki e, mokwadi o senola maikutlo a a boteng mo go

moanelwa. Thekeniki e, e senola go sotlega ga Motlalepule go tthagisa maemo a a leng mo go ona.

Ke ka tsela e mokwadi a gapeletsang mmuisi go mo utlwela botlhoko le fa a na le diphoso tsa go fitlha sephiri.

▪ **Poeletso**

Beckson le Ganz (1961:181-182) ba tthalosa fa poeletso e le go boelediwa ga tiragalo mo setlhangweng:

...it is reappearance of something known which the mind requires before it can accept a work as a unified whole, as in fact a work of art.

Tiragalo e e boelediwang e tthagisa bothokwa jwa yona mo sekwalweng. E thusa mmuisi go golaganya ditiragalo tsa kwa morago le tse a di itseng le ditiragalo tse di tlileng go tlhagelela kwa pele. Yelland le ba bangwe (1983:154) ba netefatsa se ka go re:

Repetition is often consciously used by a writer to add emphasis or force to the language or to achieve some other desired effect.

Thekeniki e, e dirisiwa go gatelela kgopolo e e rileng gore e lemosege sentle. Mojalefa (1998:11) ena o ruma dikgopolo tsa boratiori ba, ka go tthalosa gore mofuta o wa poeletso, o boeletsa tiragalo e e rileng mo mafelong a a farologaneng ka mo gare ga sekwalwa. Tiragalo e, e

tshwanetse go boelediwa ke motho a le mongwe, e ka nna mokwadi, moanedi kgotsa moanelwa.

Fa a dirisa thekeniki e, Monyaise a re:

MmaMosidi (Motlalepule) o ne a sa baya pelo ya gagwe mo go morwadie, a tlhoafaletse ngwana wa matibola nthā. Mme a lela ka pelo jaaka ngwana wa mosadi ... Go nne tsatsi le o utlwang gore e tla re mogatse a tswa tirong a mo tshele mafoko ka ditsebe gore a nne a ntse a itse nnete. E re a mmona a mo atla ka boitumelo jo bogolo, a tshabe go mo gasa ka santlhoko mo matlhong (ts.5).

le

MmaMosidi (Motlalepule) o nna pelopedi:bolelela mogatso-se-ipolae ka mabogo. A ikanya go hupa matlhatsa ka marama, go swa senku. A bona gore se se botoka ke go batla mmatlisisi, a mo tlhotlhomisetse kwa morwae o ileng gone, mme gangwe le gape fa kgopolo e e tla fa go ene, a utlwa a boifa e kete sekhukhuni se se tla bonwa ke sebatladi. A bala bakaulengwe ba ba ikanyegang go bona yo o ka mmatlelang mmatlisisi. A mo tlhoka. Morago a ikgomotsa ka go re e tla re go le tsatsi lengwe, magodimo a di re re bolele go ntsha tlhako ngabeng... (ts.8).

le

MmaMosidi (Motlalepule) a tlhoka morwae kwa o neng a mmolokile gone gore e tle e re mala a mariga a gakologile, a mo tlise gae, a tle a ore molelo wa iso la ga mmaagwe. Ya re e ne e le motho wa mmele a tswa mmalethantshane. Monna a ye tirong mo mosong a ithaya a re tsotlhe di apere tshiamo; fa a itse gore monna o e tla, a boele gae. Tsatsi lengwe le lengwe a sala monna morago go ya go batla motho a sa itse kwa o gone (ts.32).

Go tswa mo dinopolong tse di fa godimo go tla lebelelwa tiragalo e e boelediwang.

Mma-Mosidi o ne a sa baya pelo ya gagwe mo go morwadia, a **tlhoafaletse ngwana wa matibolantsha** (ts.5).

A bona gore se se botoka ke **gore a bone mmatlisisi a mo tlhotlhomisetse kwa morwae o ileng gone** (ts.8).

Mma-Mosadi a tlhoka morwae kwa o neng a mmolokile gone... Monna a ye tirong mo mosong a ithaya a re tsotlhe di apere tshiamo fa a ya jaana, mosadi a tsene motse ka legare a batla morwae, e re fa a itse gore monna o e tla, a boele gae. Tsatsi

lengwe le lengwe a sala monna **morago go ya go**
batla motho a sa itse kwa o gone (ts.32).

Tiragalo e, e boelediwa gane go ya ka fa e ntshofaditsweng mo ditemaneng tse di fa godimo ke: Motlalepule o batla Omphile.

Tiragalo e, ya go batla morwa, e boelediwa ke mokwadi mo mafelong a mararo a a farologaneng ka fa gare ga sekwalwa, e leng, mo tsebeng ya botlhano, ya borobedi le ya sometharopedi. Maikaelelo ke go lemosa mmuisi botlhokwa jo bo rileng jwa yona le go bo gatelela.

Mokwadi o gakolola mmuisi ka tiragalo e a e itseng, e leng, kutlobotlhoko, le matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule. Ga a batle go lebala tiragalo e e botlhoko e. Ke ka ntlha e a e boeletsang gangwe le gape. O e gopotsa mmuisi le go e golaganya le ditiragalo tse dingwe gore e godise matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule.

▪ **Leele**

Go tswa mo dinopolong tse di fa godimo go tlile go tlhokomelwa maele a a dirisitsweng ke Monyaise fa a rulaganya dikgang tse di lebaganeng le kutlobotlhoko ya ga Motlalepule:

Go gasa santlhoko mo matlhong.

Go nna pelopedi.

Go hupa matlhatsa ka marama.

Go swa senku.

Go ntsha tlhako ngabeng.

Gore e tle e re mala a mariga a gakologile, a mo tlise gae.

Go apara tshiamo.

Mokwadi o dirisetse maele a a supa go tthalosa kutlobotlhoko ya ga Motlalepule. Bontsi jo jwa palo ya maele a a dirisitsweng, e gapeletsa mmuisi go amogela le go tthaloganya sentle. Monyaise o oketsa matlhotlhapelo a, ka go dirisa puo ya go tshwantsha, e e sa tlwaelegang, e e sa tthamalalang e e bofitlha. Dikao di se kae fela:

Go gasa santlhoko mo matlhong, go kaya go bua dikgang tse di bosula.

Go hupa matlhatsa ka marama, go kaya go tshwara sephiri.

Go swa senku, go kaya go didimala.

Mokwadi o dirisa thekeniki e, go godisa morero wa matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule mo pading e.

- **Kobiso**

Lazarus le Smith (1983:162) ba e tthalosa jaana:

Saying the opposite of what is meant ... Irony as a manner of expression has not usually been admired... the term has connoted slyness, fox like cleverness, sometimes hypocrisy.

Puo e, e kaya mafoko a e seng bokao jwa ona. Go ka dirisiswa mafoko a a eletsegang go kaya bosula. Fa ba netefatsa se, Beckson le Ganz (1961:106) ba re:

Is a device by which a writer expresses a meaning contradictory to the stated or ostensible one... The writer may, for example, make it clear that the meaning he intends is the opposite of his literal one, or may construct a discrepancy between the appearance of a situation and the reality that underlines it. Whatever his technique, the writer demands that the reader perceives the concealed meaning that lies beneath his surface statement.

E ka nna sediriswa sa mokwadi go tlhagisa se a se buang. Thekeniki e, e gapeletsa mmuisi go epolola bofitlha jwa puo e e dirisiwang ke mokwadi ka tsela ya kganetso, ke gore mokwadi o bua se a se ganetsang. Serudu (1989:28) o ruma kgang e, ka go re mo dikwalweng mokwadi a ka dirisa mafoko a tlhaloso ya ona e farologanang le tlhaloso e a ratang gore mmuisi a e bone.

Fa a dirisa thekeniki e, Monyaise a re:

Ya re e re e le motho wa mmele, a tswa
mmalethantshane (ts.32).

Go ya ka mokwadi, Motlalepule ke motho yo mokima. Motho yo mokima gantsi ke motho yo o se nang mathata. Ka jalo, o tsewa e kete

ga a na mathata. Ka fa letlhakoreng le lengwe motho yo mosesane ke motho yo o sotlegang gonne ga a je a kgora. Fa go ka tlhokomelwa ka foo Monyaise a rulaganyang dikgang tsa bokima le boesesane ka teng, go tla lemogiwa gore o dirisa thekiniki ya kobiso. A re Motlalepule ke motho yo mosesane, mme a setse a itsisitse mmuisi gore ke yo mokima.

Mokwadi o dirisa thekiniki e, go godisa mathata a a wetseng Motlalepule gore mmuisi a utlwisise maemo a a leng mo go ona.

▪ Seane

Cuddon (1998:706) le Serudu (1989:1) ba tlhalosa seane e le polelwana e e nepagetseng, e e tebileng go tsweledisa boammaaruri jo bo sa tshikinyegeng. Cuddon (1998:706) o gatelela se ka go re:

Proverb is a short pithy saying which embodies a general truth. It is related in form and content to the maxim and the aphorism. Common to most nations and peoples, it is a form of expression of great antiquity, many writers have made use of them.

Ratoriri yo, o tlhalosa gore seane ke puo e khutshwane e e bofitlha go tlhagisa dikakanyo le maikutlo a a rileng. Se na le kamano le puo e e tlwaelegileng, e leng, ya ka metlha, ka popego le boleng jwa sona. Ke puo ya bogologolo e e botlhokwa.

Monyaise o dirisa thekeniki e, ka go re:

Mme gangwe le gape fa kgopolo e (ya go batla mmatlisisi wa morwa wa dikgora), e tla mo go ene (Motlalepule), a utlwa a tshaba, e kete sekhukhuni se tla bonwa ke sebatladi (ts.8).

Mokwadi o senola boammaaruri jo bo nepagetseng, jo bo tebileng, go tlhagisa maikutlo a ga Motlalepule tebang le go batla morwa wa gagwe ka go dirisa seane. Seane se khutshwafatsa puo. Se khutsafatsa tlhaloso fa e tshwantshangwa le puo ya ka metlha. Ga a dirisa puo e e tlwaelegileng ya ka metlha. Gantsi motho fa a dira tiragalo e a sa batleng gore e bonwe, o fetola sephiri. Ka tsela e, mokwadi o dirisitse puo e e bofitlha. Ga a tlhalose puo ka tlhamalalo. Sekao: Sekhukhuni se bonwa ke sebatladi boemong jwa gore ga go na se o ka se dirang wa se bonwe ke ope.

Maikaelelo ke go tlisa kgogedi mo puong.

▪ **Phapologantsho**

Fa go ka tlhokomelwa sentle go ya ka foo Monyaise a tlhalosang maemo a Motlalepule a leng mo go ona: bokima le bosesane, go tla lemogiwa gore mokwadi o dirisa thekeniki e nngwe ya phapologantsho. Thekeniki e, e gatelela go farologanngwa ga dilo tse pedi tse di sa tshwaneng, ka tsela ya go bontsha mmuisi botlhokwa jwa tsona. Monyaise o bua ka bokima le bosesane jwa ga Motlalepule.

Motlalepule o fetoga boMotlalepule ba babedi, ke go re ke Motlalepule yo mokima le Motlalepule yo mosesane.

Ka yona tsela e, Monyaise o farologanya motho a le mongwe go nna batho ba babedi. Ke ka tsela e go tweng Motlalepule o na le ditebego tse di sa tshwaneng: Ke Motlalepule yo mokima; ke go re ke Motlalepule yo o iketlileng a se na mathata. Gape ke Motlalepule yo mosesane; ke go re ke Motlalepule yo o leng mo mathateng. Ka jalo, mmuisi o lemoga phapologantsho e e tthagisiwang ke Monyaise ya go godisa tshiamo (bokima) le bobo (boosesane). Ke ka ntlha e go ka tweng Monyaise o dirisa thekeniki ya phapologantsho go godisa ketsaetsego e e renang mo go Motlalepule. Ke gore maemo a a leng mo go ona, ke a boitumelo le a manyaapelo.

Ka thekeniki e, Monyaise o tlotlomatsa tlhakatlhakano e e bonalang mo botshelong jwa ga Motlalepule. Tlhakatlhano e, e lebagane le go fitlha sephiri mo go RraMosidi malebana le gore o na le morwa wa dikgora.

- **Bohumanegi**

Setheo se se tllile go tlhalosiwa ka triso ya dithekeniki di le tharo, e leng: pheteletso, modirisotaelo le papiso.

- **Pheteletso**

Thekeniki e, e setse e tthalositswe gore ke sekapuo se ka sona mokwadi a godisang boemo jwa selo go feta ka moo bo itsiweng maikaelelo e le go gatelela botlhokwa jwa kang e e rileng.

Mokwadi a re:

Fa a (mosimane yo o tedutsebeng) a šeba kwa morago, a bona mosetsana (Motlalepule) a se dilola (sekgwama) ka `itlho le le tshologang ditete; a boa a tabogile (ts.1).

Mokwadi o feteletsa puo ka gore leitlho le le tshologang ditete gonne ka tlhago leitlho ga le tshologe ditete, le ntsha dikeledi fa motho a ne a lela. Ditete tsona di ntshiwa ke molomo fa motho a na le keletso ya dijo. O godisa boemo jwa selo go feta ka moo bo itsiweng ka teng gore mmuisi a lemoge boemo jwa ga Motlalepule jo bo lebaganeng le maemo a gagwe a a kwa tlase.

Pharologantsho e, e tthalositswe ke thekeniki e le nngwe fela, e leng, modirisotaelo.

- **Modirisotaelo**

Mathibela le ba bangwe (1997: 79) ba re modirisotaelo ke:

The imperative mood indicates that the process is a command or a strong request.

Modirisotaelo o laela gore go dirwe sengwe kgotsa tiragalo e e rileng. Ziervogel le Taljaard (1981:27) bona ba oketsa kakanyo e, ka go re:

A command may be given to one person by using only the verb stem.

Basekaseki ba, ba kaya gore go ka laelwa motho a le mongwe go dirisiwa thito ya lediri. Taljaard le Bosch (1988:27) bona ba re go ka laelwa batho ba bantsi ka go dirisa setlhongwa sa –ng mo thitong ya lediri. Setshedi (1980:79) o ruma ka go re mmui o laela mmuisiwa go dira tiro e a batlang e dirwa, e bile lediri le neelwa tiro ya go tlhagisa maikhutlo a tsiboso.

Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng a raya Motlalepule a re:

Tsaya, ke go ntshe motho (ts.1).

Mmui, e leng, mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o laela mmuisiwa, e leng, Motlalepule go dira tiro ya go tsaya (letlhare la ponto).

O dirisa thito ya lediri ‘-tsaya’, go tsibosa Motlalepule gore ga a na madi, ka gore ke gona a gorogang go tswa kwa Matile. Monyaise o dirisitse thekeniki e, go godisa bohumanegi jwa ga Motlalepule jo bo mo dirang gore e nne wa maemo a a kwa tlase.

Monyaise o dirisa ‘tsaya’ gonne e le botlhokwa go gatelela bohumanegi jwa ga Motlalepule gore le mmuisi a bo lemoge sentle (bonolo).

- **Papiso**

Fa go ka elwa tlhoko mokwadi o bapisa dilo tse pedi tse di farologaneng, e leng, leitlho le ditete ka go tlhagisa pharologanyo ya tsona. Leitlho le tshologa dikeledi fa ditete di tshololwa ke molomo. Dilo tse pedi tse, di a farologana. Leitlho ke karolo ya sefatlhego fa ditete e le metsi (mathe) a a elelang go tswa ka fa molomong. Ditete di tshologa gantsi fa motho a utlwa monkgo wa dijo tse di monate, a lela kgotsa a robetse. Gantsi a ntshiwa ke keletso. Ka tsela e, mokwadi o bapisa leitlho le le bonang madi, mme le eletsa le molomo o o tshologang ditete fa o bona dijo tse di eletsegang (monate). Ka go dirisa thekeniki e, mokwadi o godisa semelo sa bohumanegi jwa ga Motlalepule jo bo mo dirang gore e nne wa maemo a a kwa tlase.

- **Kutlwelobotlhoko**

Setheo/Pharologantsho e, e tlhalositswe ka dithekeniki di le tharo, e leng: Potso e e sa tlhokeng karabo, leele le tlogelo.

- **Potso e e sa tlhokeng karabo**

Baldick (1993:189) a re potso e e sa tlhokeng karabo ke:

... a question asked for the sake of persuasive effect than a genuine information.

Ratori yo, o tlhalosa gore potso e e bodiwang e na le tshusumetso e e rileng, mme ga e tlhoke karabo ya yona, e a itsege. Motlalepule o buisana le RraMosidi a re:

RraMosidi o itumelela go bona bana ba tsewa tsia ka go lekana. Ga twe go tshego ba ba pelonomi, gonne bogosi jwa legodimo ke jwa bone. A ke bopelonomi go godisetsa bana ba masea mo matlung a kokelo? (ts.6).

Motlalepule o botsa potso e a itseng karabo ya yona. O na le tshusumetso e e rileng ka go botsa potso e e sa tlhokeng karabo. Ga se potso ke kgatelelo ya kutlwelobotlhoko. O utlwela ngwana wa gagwe botlhoko. Ke ka ntlha e go tweng o na le kutlwelobotlhoko. Mokwadi o dirisa thekeniki e, go godisa kgogedi ya padi ya gagwe.

▪ **Leele**

Leele le dirisiwa ke mokwadi go natefisa puo. Ga se puo ya ka metlha e e tlwaelegileng. Fa go buiwa ka puo e e tlwaelegileng ga go tlhokege tlhokomelo epe e e rileng. Motlalepule a raya RraMosidi a re:

Rramasedi o itumelela go bona bana ba tsewa tsia ka go lekana (ts.6).

Go tswa mo nopolong e e fa godimo go lemogiwa gore mokwadi o dirisitse leele: **go tsewa tsia**, e leng, puo e e bofitlha, e seng ya ka metlha, go tlhagisa sengwe se se botlhokwa. Mokwadi a ka bo a

dirisitse puo e e bonolo e leng **go tlhokomelwa**. Monyaise o ngoka mmuisi go tlhokomela se a se buang ka go dirisa puo e e sa tlwaelegang. Ka go rialo mokwadi o dirisa thekeniki ya leele go ngoka mmuisi go mo rotloetsa gore a buise ka kelotlhoko ka se a se anelang.

- **Tlogelo**

Thekeniki e, e tthalositswe fa e le tsela e mokwadi a tlogelang go tthalosa dikgang ka botlalo fela a itse gore dikgang tseo di a itsiwe. Motlalepule a raya mosadimogolo a re:

Ga ba... Dikeledi tsa matlhotlhapelo tsa mo kaba molomo (ts.5).

Mo nopolong e e neilweng fa godimo e, tiragalo e e tlogetsweng ke ya gore baoki ga ba a bolelela Motlalepule gore a tle go tsaya morwae wa dikgora leng.

Tiragalo e, mokwadi o e tlogetse ka bomo gonne e a itsiwe, e bile o potlakisa nako. O batla gore nako eo, ya go anega dikgang e fele ka pele. Tiragalo e tlogetsweng e na le kgogedi gonne mmuisi o batla go itse gore dikgang di feletse jang. Ke gore bofelo jwa dikgang tseo bo ntse jang. Ka go dirisa thekeniki e, mokwadi o tlhola kgogedi mo setlhangweng sa gagwe.

Motlalepule ga a na makoa

Mo tshekatshekong ya semelo sa ga Motlalepule fa e le motho yo o se nang makoa, tlhaloso le tlhagiso ya go tlhoka makoa a, e tlile go latela lenaane le:

- Puo ya mokwadi
 - Puo le ditiro tsa ga Motlalepule.
 - Puo le ditiro tsa baanelwa ba bangwe.
-
- **Puo ya mokwadi**

Fa go sekasekiwa go tlhoka makoa ga Motlalepule go tlile go tlhokomelwa diphapologantsho tse: (i) lorato, (ii) kutlwelobotlhoko le (iii) tshiamo tse ditlhalosiwang ke mokwadi.

- **Lorato**

Mokwadi o tlhalosa lorato lwa ga Motlalepule ka go dirisa dithekeniki di le supa, e leng; Tatelano ya ditiragalo, sekai, leele, motifi, poelomorago, phapologantsho, le tswantshanyo

- **Tatelano ya ditiragalo**

Grobler (1989: 6) o tlhalosa tatelano ya ditiragalo ka go re ke:

Relationship between the succession of events in the story and their arrangement in the text.

Ke mokgwa o mokwadi a rulaganyang ditiragalo ka go elela go lemosa kamano ya tsona mo sekwalweng. Shipley (1970: 52) o oketsa kakanyo e, ka go re:

The logical interrelation of successive parts, so that a work holds together as a unit. Often linked with unity and emphases as the basic qualities of a composition.

O gatelela tatelano e e utlwagalang ya ditiragalo go di golaganya gore di nne seoposengwe. Ke ka ntlha e O'Neil (1994:42-43) a reng ke mokgwa o o tlhamaletseng wa ditiragalo. Go simolola ka tiragalo ya ntlha, ya bobedi, ya boraro jalo jalo go ya ka tatelano ya tsona. Ke ka tsela eo Kakonis le Wilcox (1969:113) bona ba reng maikaelelo a paakanyo e, ya ditiragalo ke go di amanya le tatelano ya nako gore ditiragalo tseo, di kgone go bonagala sentle le go tlhaloganyega bonolo.

Monyaise a re:

Ba (Motlalepule a belege Omphile le mosadimogolo MmaSebolai) tlhatloga mokong, ba fitlha ba ema fa pele ga ntlo e bonesitswe ka pone-ditalana ka fa ntle. Fa ba sena go nna ba kabakanya ka sebaka se seleele, ga tswa

mosetsana wa mooki mo segotlong sa ntlo e. Ya re
a ba bona, a nyenya (ts.4).

Mokwadi o rulagantse ditiragalo tse di lebaganeng le go sireletsa lesea le la ga Motlalepule mo ntlong ya kgodisetso ka tatelano e e rileng ya ditiragalo tse tlhano. Go tla lemogiwa gore ditiragalo tse di ka latelana go golagannngwa, go tloga tiragalong ya ntlha e leng; **Ba tthatloga mokong**, go fitlha go ya botlhano, e leng; **ya re a ba bona a nyenya**. Go tla tlhokomelwa gore ditiragalo tse gape di rulagantswe go ya ka tatelano ya nako. Ke go re ditiragalo tse di rulagantswe go ya ka nako ya tsona. Ke ka moo mmuisi a kgonang go di lemoga sentle le go di tlhaloganya bonolo.

Go rulaganya dikgang tsa go sireletsa lesea, tse go ka tweng ke lorato lwa ga mmaagwe ngwana ka tsela ya thekeniki e, go godisa go humanega ga Motlalepule.

▪ Sekai

Thekeniki e, sentle e tlhalositswe fa e le kemedi ya selo kgotsa tiragalo e mokwadi a ipopelang yona go ka tshwantsha dikgang tsa gagwe.

Monyaise a re:

... ba fitlha ba ema fa pele ga ntlo e bonesitswe ka
pone tse ditalana ka fa ntle (ts. 6).

Fa go ka tlhokomelwa nopolo e sentle, go tla lemogiwa fa ntlo e, e kaya tshireletso ya lesea la ga Motlalepule, motho fa a le ka fa ntlong o sireletsega mo dipuleng, dirameng tse di maruru, diphologolong tse di gagolakang le tse dingwe tse di ka utlwisang mmele bothoko. Ka fa gare ga ntlo go na le baoki ba ba nayang lesea tlanelo le thuto e e tshwanetseng ngwana mongwe le mongwe le lorato lwa ga mmaagwe ngwana. Fa go ka tlhokomelwa ka moo Motlalepule a batlelang lesea la gagwe tshireletso ka teng, go tla lemogiwa fa e le mosadi yo o lorato tota.

Mokwadi o dirisa thekeniki e, go godisa semelo sa gore Motlalepule ke motho wa lorato.

Lorato lo tswelala pele go tlhagelela ka thekeniki ya poelomorago, tshwantshanyo, phapologantshe le leele.

Monyaise a re:

Tsatsi lengwe le lengwe (Motlalepule) a tshwantsha Mosidi le mogoloe, yo e neng ya re a le mo tlalelong, a mmita Omphile, go nne tsatsi le o utlwanng gore e tla re mogatse a tswa tirong, a mo tshele mafoko ka ditsebe gore a nne a ntse a itse nnete. E re a mmona a mo atla ka boitumelo jo bogolo, a tshabe go mo gasa ka santlhoko mo matlhong (ts.5).

▪ Poelomorago

Lazarus le Smith (1983:121) le Serudu (1989:45) ba re poelomorago ke tsenatseno ya moela wa tatelano ya ka metlha ya ditiragalo mo kaneding kgotsa terameng ka maikaelelo a go senola go le gonnye tse di setseng di diregile fela di na le kamano le tsa jaanong. Yelland le Jones (1983:172) ba oketsa kakanyo e, ka gore ke mokgwa o mongwe wa go senola setlhoa kwa tshimologong le go tlhagisetsa mmuisi se se tlhodileng setlhoa se gore tiragalo e tlhaloganyege.

Ke ka ntlha e Holman (1972:225) a reng ke tsela e ditiragalo tsa sekwalwa di senolang tshenolo pele, mme go dirisiwa didiriswa tse (a) go gopola baanelwa sentle (b) kanelo ka baanelwa, (c) tatelano ya toro le (d) tsela nngwe e motho a ka ikgathololang le se se diragalang kgotsa go nna le mogopolo o o itumetseng, gore poelomorago e bonagale sentle.

Adejere (1992:116) o ruma kakanyo e, ka gore thekeniki e, e ka bonagala ka ditsela di le pedi, e leng: ka tsela e mokwadi a ka emisang tatelano ya ditiragalo ka teng, a tsaya tiragalo nngwe e e tlhagisitsweng kwa morago, a e boeletsa. Seno se tlhola gore ditiragalo di se tsamae ka tolamo. Nako nngwe mokwadi a ka dirisa kakanyo ya moanelwa go golaganya tiragalo e fetileng le ya jaanong go di lomaganya go dira seoposengwe.

Tiragalo ya go goroga ga lesea la Motlalepule kwa ntlokgodisetsong e diregile mo tsebeng ya bone go fitlha mo tsebeng ya botlhanano mo temaneng ya bobedi. Tiragalo e, mmuisi ga a ka a lemoga gore e tlile

go boelediwa. Mmuisi o simolola go e lemoga morago ga fa Motlalepule a akanya ka tiragalo eo, mo tsebeng ya botlhanano mo temaneng ya borataro. Ka jalo, mmuisi o lemoga gore tiragalo e, e diregile peleng.

Go tla lemogiwa gore Monyaise o boeletsa tiragalo e, ka maikhelelo a gore mmuisi a lemoge botlhokwa jwa lorato lwa ga Motlalepule mo go morwae. Ga a mo lebale le fa a na le ngwana yo mongwe gape.

Ka go dirisa thekeniki e, mokwadi o gatelela tshiamo ya ga Motlalepule gonne ke motho yo o lorato.

Tshwantshanyo e tlhalositswe fa e le sekapuo se se bapisang dilo tse pedi, tse di sa tshwaneng ka popego, mme di ka tshwana ka tiriso le thanolo ya tsona.

Mokwadi o bapisa masea a mabedi a ga Motlalepule, e leng, Omphile le Mosidi. O bapisa masea a mabedi, a e leng, mosimane le mosetsana. Mokwadi o gatelela gore masea a a tshwana e kete ke selo se le sengwe. Ke gore Omphile o tshwana le Mosidi ka gonne ke masea a ga Motlalepule. Se se gatelela gore Monyaise o lebaganya tshwantsho e ya lorato lwa ga mmaagwe ona.

Fa go ka tlhokomelwa sentle go tla lemogiwa gore ka go dirisa thekeniki ya **tshwantshanyo**, Monyaise o tlhagisa thekeniki e nngwe gape ka fa gare ga thekeniki e, e leng, **phapologantsho**.

Mokwadi o farologanya masea a mabedi a a ga Motlalepule ka tsela ya phapologants'ho. Ke gore go tla lemogiwa gape gore pharologanyo e nngwe ya bone e lebagane le ka tsela e masea a ga Motlalepule a belegweng ka yona: Omphile o belegwe ka tsela ya petelelo fa Mosidi a belegwe ka mokgwa wa lorato le lenyalo. Mokwadi o tlotlomatsa pelego e e rategang ya semolao. Ka jalo, Monyaise o gapeletsa mmuisi go ila (go se rate) bob'e, pelego e e sa siamang ya ga Omphile le go rata (tshiamo) pelego e e siameng ya ga Mosidi. Go ka twe mokwadi o dirisa thekeniki e, go godisa tshiamo go gatelela lorato lwa motsadi ka kakaretso.

- **Leele**

Thekeniki e, e tlhalositswe fa e tlhotlheletsa mmuisi go buisa ka kelotlhoko gonne ga se puo e e tlwaelegileng ya ka metlha. Ke puo e e fitlhegileng.

Go tswa mo nopolong e e fa godimo, mokwadi o dirisitse maele a mabedi, e leng: **go tshela mafoko ka ditsebe le go gasa santlhoko mo mathong**, e leng, puo e e fitlhegileng e e sa tlwaelegang. Fa a ka bo a dirisitse puo e e bonolo, e leng, e ka bo e le go bolelela le go utlwisa motho botlhoko, mmuisi o ne a ka se ele tlhoko se mokwadi a se buang. Mokwadi o dirisa thekeniki e, go gatelela lorato lo Motlalepule a le bontshang mo go morwae, ka go mo gopola nako nngwe le nngwe.

- **Kutlwelobotlhoko**

Monyaise o lemosa go nna kutlwelobotlhoko ga Motlalepule fa a re:

Mma-Mosidi (Motlalepule) a gopola tsatsi le o neng a tsamaya le mosadimogolo MmaSebolai. A ditlhabi di mo kokobalele! Bagologolo ba rile ngwaga o sa nthateng kgabaganya, o sutele tse dingwe (ts.6).

Fa go ka buisiwa nopolo e, ka kelobotlhoko mokwadi o dirisitse dithekeniki di le nne, e leng: poelamorago, modirisopego, modirisokeletso le seane.

- **Poelomorago**

Thekiniki e, e setse e tlhalositswe fa e le tsela e mokwadi a boeletsang ditiragalo tse di diregileng kwa morago.

Tiragalo ya go isiwa ga lesea la ga Motlalepule kwa ntlokgodisetsong e diregile mo tsebeng ya bone. Tiragalo e, mmuisi ga a ka a e ela tlhoko la ntlha fa e diragala gonne a sa itse gore e tlile go boelediwa kwa pele. Ke ka ntlha e mmuisi a simololang go e tlhokomela fa e boelediwa gape mo tsebeng ya botlhano le ya borataro. Se, se dira gore mmuisi a lemoge botlhokwa jwa tiragalo eo.

Tiragalo e, e diregile la ntlha, ya boelediwa la bobedi le la boraro gonne mokwadi a lemogile gore e botlhokwa thata ka ntlha ya gore e gatelela kutlwelobotlhoko e Motlalepule a nang nayo mo ngwaneng wa gagwe yo a mmelegeng ka tsela e e utlwisang botlhoko ya petelelo.

▪ **Modirisopego**

Thekiniki e, e tshalositswe fa e le modiriso o o ikemetseng ka nosi. Go tswa mo nopolong e e fa godimo mokwadi o dirisitse modirisopego.

Mma-Mosidi a gopola tsatsi le o neng a tsamaya le mosadimogolo MmaSebolai (ts. 6).

Modiriso o ga o batle maitshetlego. Ke ka ntlha e go ka tweng, mofuta o wa modiriso o theilwe mo godimo ga madiri a mabedi a: a gopola le go tsaya loeto. Madiri a ikemetseng ka boona a lebagane le: a gopola ke go tlisa kakanyo e e fetileng ya go isa morwae wa dikgora kwa ntlo kgodisetsong, a tsamaya ke fa a akanya loeto lwa gagwe le MmaSebolai go ya kwa Ikageleng (ntlokgodisetsong) ke ka foo go buiwang ka ga boikemelo jo bo tiileng jaaka thekeniki e e dirisitsweng ke Monyaise go rulaganya kutlwelobotlhoko ya ga Motlalepule ya go belega ka tsela e e utlwisang botlhoko ya petelelo.

▪ **Modirisokeletso**

Lombard le ba bangwe (1993:154) ba re:

The subjunctive is a dependent predicative mood.

Modirisokeletso o ikaegile ka letiro la mediriso e mengwe. Ke ka ntlha e Nokaneng le Louwrens (1993:289) ba reng:

Ge o bala ka kelohloko, o tla lemoga ge modirisogore gantši o tšwelela o thekgilwe ke medirišo ye mengwe; gagolo modirišopego le modirišotaelo.

Basekaseki ba, ba kaya gore modirisokeletso ga wa ikemela ka nosi. Ntsime le Krüger (1989:295) bona ba tlhalosa popego ya ona ka go re gape o itsiwe ka lekopanyi ‘gore’ le le kopanyang polelwanakala ya modirisokeletso le polelwanakutu ya modirisopego. Van Wyk (1992:105) ena o tlhagisa tiro ya modirisokeletso e le go kgona go eletsa kgotsa go kopa fa go diriswa mafokwana: ‘a ke’ le ‘anke’, mme thito ya lediri e felelela ka tumanosi ‘-e’.

Monyaise o dirisitse modirisokeletso fa a re. A ditlhabi di mo kokobalele! Ka go dira jaana o tlhagisa keletso ya kutlwelobotlhoko. Ka modirisokeletso go gatelelwa dintlha tse:

- Modiriso o o sa ikemelang ka nosi: **A ditlhabi di mo kokobalele.**
- O ikaegile ka mediriso e mengwe jaaka modiriso taelo: **Kokobalang ditlhabi!**
- Le modirisopego: **MmaMosidi a gopola tsatsi leo a neng a tsamaya le MmaSebolai.**
- O tla ka fa morago (latela) ga modiriso o o ikaegileng ka ona gore bokao jwa ona bo tlhaloganyege: **MmaMosidi (Motlalepule) a gopola tsatsi le a neng a tsamaya le mosadimogolo MmaSebolai.** A ditlhabi di mo kokobalele!

- O kgona go tlhagisa kopo kgotsa keletso fa go twe : A ditlhadi di mo kokobalele.

Ka go dirisa thekeniki e, Monyaise o tlhagisetsa mmuisi kutlwelobotlhoko e Motlalepule a nang le yona.

▪ Seane

Thekeniki e, e tlhalositswe fa e le polelwana e e nepagetseng, e e tebileng go tsweledisa boammaaruri jo bo sa tshikinyegeng.

Go tswa fa nopolong e e fa godimo mokwadi o dirisitse seane se:

Ngwaga o sa nthateng kgabaganya, o sutele tse dingwe (ts.6).

Monyaise o bua boammaaruri jo bo sa tshikinyegeng, ka go dirisa puo ya bogologolo, e e tlwaelegileng, e leng: Ngwaga o o ntliseditseng mathata kgabaganya, mme go tle dingwaga tse dingwe tse di tla lereng boitumelo. Ka go dirisa seane se, mokwadi o rata mmuisi le go mo laela fa gore Motlalepule o na le kutlwelobotlhoko gonne fa a bona tiragalo e e sa itumediseng o a tshwenyega, e bile o a amega. Seno se kaya gore le ene Motlalepule ka boena, o utlwa botlhoko.

Monyaise o dirisa thekeniki e, go gatelela kutlwelobotlhoko ya ga Motlalepule.

4.3. TSHOSOBANYO

Mo karolong e, go sekasekilwe dipharologantsho di le pedi, e leng: lorato le kutlwelobotlhoko tse di dirisitsweng ke mokwadi go tlhagisa go tlhoka makoa ga Motlalepule. Fa Monyaise a tlhagisa dipharologantsho tse, o dirisa dithekeniki di le robongwe, e leng: Tatelano ya ditiragalo, sekai, tshwantshanyo, phapologantsho, leele, modirisopego, modirisokeletso, seane, le poelomorago go lemosa go tlhoka makoa ga Motlalepule. Thekeniki e e dirisitsweng go gaisa tse dingwe ke poelomorago. Maikaelelo e le go gatelela matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule.

- **Puo le ditiro tsa ga Motlalepule**

Fa go ka buisiwa padi e sentle, go tla lemogiwa gore karolwana e ya puo le ditiro tsa ga Motlalepule ga e a tlhalosiwa ka botlalo. E tlhagelela fela mo tsebeng ya bosomaamarataro robedi mo a buang ka lokwalo a re:

Modimo O inchwarele. Batho thusang ngoanake,
o koa Olanti. Ke 'meile lochwao ka ha morago ga
tlhogo (ts.68).

Go tswa fa nopolong e, go tla lemogiwa gore Monyaise o dirisitse pharologantsho e le nngwe, e leng: tshiamo. Yona e tlhalositswe ka dithekeniki tse: modirisotaelo, modirisopego, leina le mmuesi ka tsela ya lokwalo.

▪ **Modirisotaelo**

Mathibela la ba bangwe (1997:79) ba tthalosa modirisotaelo ka go re ke:

The imperative mood indicates that the process is a strong command or a strong request.

Basekaseki ba, ba tthalosa fa modirisotaelo o laela gore go dirwe sengwe kgotsa tiragalo e e rileng. Ziervogel le Taljaard (1981:27) bona ba re ke:

A command may be given to one person by using only the verb stem.

Modirisotaelo o laela motho a le mongwe fela ka tiriso ya lediri. Taljaard le Bosch (1988:27) ba re ga go laelwe motho a le mongwe fela. Go ka laelwa batho ba le bantsi ka go dirisa setlhongwa sa-ng.

Go tswa fa nopolong e e fa godimo go dirisitswe modirisotaelo: **Modimo O inchwarele**. Modiriso o, o lebagane le taelo ka gonne go na le yo o laelwang go dira tiro e e rileng. Taelo e ka tla ka ditsela tse di farologaneng. Go ka laelwa motho a le mongwe kgotsa batho ba le bantsi. Thulaganyo ya puo ya taelo eo, ya go lebagana le go itshwarelwa ga Motlalepule e lebagane le motho a le mongwe. Gantsi fa taelo e lebagane le motho a le mongwe e na le maatla, ka ntlha ya gore e a diragatswa. Tse di laelwang di tshwanetse go diragadiwa. Godimo ga dipphoso tsotlhe tse Motlalepule a di dirileng, o kopa gore

Modimo O mo itshwarele. Ka jalo, taolo e, e lebagane le maitshwarelo.

Ka jalo, thekeniki e, e lebagane le maitshwarelo.

- **Modirisopego**

Thekeniki e, e tthalositswe fa e le modiriso o o nang le lediri le le begang tiragalo e e rileng, mme le ikemetse ka nosi.

Ke 'meile lochwao ka ha morago ga tlhogo, ke modirisopego. Lediri le, le bega tiragalo ya go tshwaya lesea e e diregileng ka nako e e fetileng. Puo e, mmuisi o e tthaloganyang sentle gonne e tthalosa tiro e Motlalepule a e begang, e leng, ya go baya lesea letshwao leo a tla mo itseng ka lona motlhang a le batlang. Sengwe gape se se botlhokwa se se lemogiwang ke go re ke pego e e feleletseng gonne ga e batle thuso e e rileng. Ke go re se se buiwang ke se se nang le tthaloso e e utlwalang.

Ka go dirisa pego e e feleletseng, mokwadi o godisa matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule ka go begela babuisi gore Motlalepule ka boene o beile lesea letshwao morago ga go le belega, gonne a le rata gore a tle a le itse ka lona mo nakong e e tlang.

- **Leina**

Mokoena (1998:70) o tthalosa kakanyo e, ka go re:

*A noun is the name of a place, person or a thing.
This means that a noun is a word that signifies
names of anything one can imagine.*

Leina ke la selo, sengwe le sengwe. E ka nna felo, motho kgotsa seakanngwa. Serayi (1989:183) o oketsa kakanyo e, ka go re:

The name-giving technique has cultural origins. It emanates from the African practice of giving names in terms of, among other things, physical appearance, psychological make-up and behaviour or traits.

Go ya ka setso sa Moaferika leina la ngwana le ka tlholwa ke tiragalo e e rileng ya hisetori (e kgolo), keletso ya batsadi kgotsa popego le tebego ya lesea. Ke ka ntlha e Serayi (1989:14-15) ena e reng:

In African communities name-giving is of special significance. In some cases large ceremonies are organised on the day of naming a child. It is also believed that certain names given to some individuals, may have an influence on their behaviour and personalities.

Leina le a tlotliwa. Ka tsela e, fa lesea le fiwa leina go diriwa moletlo o mogolo, mme losika lo a kokoana go tla go naya lesea leo leina le le amanang le losika lwa bona. E bile Setswana se a re: 'Leina le ile borelelong' gape 'Ina lebe seromo'.

Omphile ke leina la lesea la ga Motlalepule. Leina le, le tlhotswe ke tiragalo e e botlhoko, e e tlhagetseng Motlalepule, ya go ima lesea le, ka tsela ya petelelo. Omphile e kaya gore Motlalepule o filwe lesea ke motho a sa mo itse e bile a sa mo rate. Motlalepule o raya go re: Omphile lesea kwa ntle ga tetla. Gape Omphile, le kaya fa Motlalepule a filwe ngwana ke Modimo. Ke mpho ya gagwe go tswa Modimong.

Tiragalo e, ke ya matlhotlhapelo mo botshelong jwa ga Motlalepule. E mo sulafaditse botshelo jotlhe jwa gagwe. Ka tsela e, ga a kitla a e lebala. Ke ka ntlha e a naganang lesea le, leina le le amanang le tiragalo e. Gape o leboga Modimo go bo a mo file ngwana yo o tshelang yo o itekanetseng. O ka bo a ne a tlhaga a lapile kgotsa a golafetse.

Ka go dirisa thekeniki e, mokwadi o godisa matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule.

- **Mmuaesi**

Cohen (1973:196) o tlhalosa kakanyo e, ka go re ke:

*A one-sided conversation. Two may be involved,
but one person dominates the conversation.*

Cohen o kaya gore moanelwa a ka bua a le esi, mo phatlhalatseng a utlweletswe. Serudu (1989:4) o oketsa puo e ka go re mmuaesi e ka nna polelo e telejana e mo go yona moanelwa a ntshang maikutlo a

gagwe, a buela kwa godimo fa pele ga babogedi, fa e le gore ke terama. Serayi (1989:204-205) ena a tlhalosa mefuta ya mmuaesi ka go re:

Monologue... firstly it assumes the form of direct unspoken soliloquy. The effectiveness of the above monologue as mode of characterization derives from the play in providing a panoramic view which allows the reader's insight into the character's thought patterns... the second form of which the interior monologue assumes is that of letter-writing... that is moments of crisis or dilemma. They as catalysts of decision-making or decision taking. The third form of the interior monologue assumes is poetry.

Go na le mefuta e meraro ya mmuaesi. Wa ntlha ke fa moanelwa a bua a le esi, a buela mo pelong, mme mmuisi a newa maatla (tetla) ya go mo tlhaloganya. O lebagane le go tlhalosa semelo sa moanelwa. Wa bobedi, fa motho a kwala lokwalo a ka dirisa mmuaesi go tlhalosa mathata a a lebaganeng le go tsaya tshwetso e e rileng. Fa mofuta wa boraro e le wa tsela ya poko. Mmoki le ene o bua le batho ba a ba bokelang ka tsela ya mmuaesi.

Go tla lemogiwa gore go tswa mo nolopong e e fa godimo mokwadi o dirisitse mofuta wa bobedi wa mmuaesi ka e bile go le mo pepeneneng ka ntlha ya fa go dirisitswe lokwalo. Ka tsela tsela e, patlisiso e tlike go sala morago mofuta wa lokwalo gonne ke ona o lebaganeng le

tshekatsheko e. Mo lokwalong, Motlalepule o patelediwa ke mathata a a leng mo go ona, a go bogisiwa ke sephiri sa go re o na le ngwana wa dikgora. Ka tsela e, o batla go tlisa tshwetso ya mathata a, ka go kopa Modimo maitshwarelo ka go latlha lesea le, le go kopa batho thuso gore ba mmatlise lesea la gagwe. O na le poifo ya go bua mo phatlalatseng, gonne baanelwa bangwe ba ka fetola boemo jo a leng mo go bona, e bile ba ka mo godisetsa mathata go na le go a fedisa.

Monyaise o dirisa thekeniki e, go senola semelo sa gore Motlalepule o na le sephiri se se mo tlholelang matlhotlhapelo.

4.4. TSHOSOBANYO

Mo karolong e, go sekasekilwe pharologantsho e le nngwe, e leng: tshiamo e e dirisitsweng ke Motlalepule go senola puo le ditiro tsa gagwe tse di mo tlhalosang gore ke motho yo o se nang makoa. Fa pharologantsho e, e tlhalosiwa go dirisitswe dithekeniki di le nne, e leng: modirisotaelo; modirisopego, leina le mmuaesi ka tsela ya lokwalo.

- **Puo le ditiragalo tsa baanelwa ba bangwe**

Fa go sekasekiwa puo le ditiragalo tsa baanelwa ba bangwe ka ga Motlalepule go lemogiwa gore go na le dipharologantsho tse tharo, e leng: go tlhoka kitso le go tshwara sephiri.

- **Go tlhoka kitso**

Monyaise o rulagantse go tlhoka kitso ka dithekeniki di le tlhano, e leng: lesupi, lelatlhelwa, motifi, seane le lerui. Tshekatsheko ya dithekeniki tse ke e e latelang fa morago.

- **Lesupi**

Setshedi(1980:47-48) le boSnyman (1980:51) ba re lesupi ke lefoko le le supang le go tthaola leina. Lesupi mo maemong a lona lotlhe le itlameletse mo popegong ya maina go ya ka ditlhogo tsa ona. Popego ya lesupi la maemo a ntlha e kaya fa lesupi le, le bopilwe ka thuanitlhophaina le tumanosi ya tlhogo ya leina le le supiwang. Lesupi le lengwe la maemo a ntlha le bopilwe ka go gokelela mogatlana-no kgotsa-na mo lesuping la maemo a ntlha. Masupi a lefelo a na le kgolagano ya kemo fa gare ga mmui le mmuisiwa. Go na le kemo ya ntlha, ya bobedi, ya boraro, ya bone le ya botlhano. Kemo ya maemo a ntlha ke ya masupi a a kayang lefelo le le gaufi le mmui le mmuisiwa jaaka fa/mo. Kemo ya maemo a bobedi ke ya masupi a a kayang lefelo le le gaufi le mmui, jaaka fana/mona. Kemo ya maemo a boraro ke masupi a a kayang lefelo le le mo tikologong ya mmui le mmuisiwa, mmogo le lefelo le mmui le mmuisiwa ba leng karolo ya lona jaaka fano/mono. Kemo ya bone ke ya masupi a a kayang lefelo le le gaufi le mmuisiwa jaaka foo/moo. Kemo ya botlhano ke ya masupi a a kayang lefelo le le kayang ka bokgakala go tswa go mmui le mmuisiwa jaaka fale/mole.

Monyaise o dirisitse lesupi la maemo a ntlha, ‘mono’ fa a rulaganya puo ya gagwe ka mosimane yo o tedutsebeng. Lesupi ‘mono’ le

bopilwe ka tlhogo ya leina mo- le magatlana-no. Le na le kgolagano ya kemo ya boraro. Go raya gore kemo ya boraro ya lesupi le, mmui, e leng, mosimane yo o tedutsebeng le mmuisiwa Motlalepule ba mo tikologong e, e bile ke ka ntlha ya fa ba dira karolo ya yona. Monyaise o gatelela go tlhoka kitso ga Motlalepule ka lefelo leo-gonne e le gona a gorogang go tswa Matile. Ka go dirisa thekeniki e, mokwadi o godisa semelo sa ga Motlalepule mo pading e.

▪ **Lelathelwa**

Setshedi (1980:93) o re lelatlhelwa ke lefoko le le latlhelwang mo polelong go natefisa puo. Paulos (1990:434) o tlaleletsa kgopolo e ka go re:

The interjection is defined as word or phrase that is used in syntactic isolation and that expresses sudden emotion.

Lelathelwa ga le na kgolagano epe le dikarolwana tse dingwe tsa puo, le ka dirisiwa fela le le losi, gape le tlhagisa maikutlo a a rileng mo puong, e ka nna a a itumedisang kgotsa a a sa itumediseng. Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o raya Motlalepule a re:

Owaai! Aitsane lo bo lo tla itira batho ba mono
(ts. 1).

Owaai! E dirisitswe jaaka lelatlhelwa. Ke lefoko le le latlhetsweng fela mo polelong gonne ga le amane le dikarolo tse dingwe tsa puo jaaka thuanysediri: lo; ledirilethusi:bo, thuanysediri: lo, popi ya pakatlang: tla, thito ya lediri: -itira le sedirwa: batho. Lelathelwa le, le lebagane

le maikutlo a lonyatso a a seng monate. Monyaise o le dirisitse go natefisa puo le go ngoka mmuisi go batla go itse lefelo le, le ditiragalo tsa lona.

▪ **Motifi**

Fa a tlhalosa motifi Serudu (1989:35) a re ke lefoko le le boelediawang mo puong. Peck le Coyle(1984:142) ba oketsa puo e ka go re:

Motif is a type of incident or image that occurs frequently in texts.

Motifi ke poeletso ya sekao/setshwantsho se se rileng mo sekwalweng. Ke ka ntlha e Cohen (1973:191) a tlaleletsang kakanyo e, ka go re:

Motif can be related to characterisation, emphasizing a person's mannerisms appearance or traits.

Tiriso ya motifi mo sekwalweng, e tthagisa semelo le boanedi jwa moanelwa.

Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o raya Motlalepule a re:

Kgaityadiake, motlha o leng lobaka mono, Gouteng, o tla itse go atlarela se badimo ba se go fang. O sa tswa gae; o sa kgotshe ting ya kwa gae, o sa belafala. Go siame mma, re tla kopana gape (ts.2).

Go tswa mo nopolong e, mokwadi o dirisitse mafoko a: 'O sa tswa gae,' 'o sa kgotshe ting,' le 'o sa belafala' go lemosa mmui gore Motlalepule ga a na kitso ya Gouteng. O boeeditse 'o sa...' gararo go gatelela gore Motlalepule ga a itse lefelo le, gonne ke gona a gorogang go tswa Matile. Thulaganyo ya dikgang ka tsela e, e bidiwa motifi go gatelela maemo a go tlhoka kitso ga Motlalepule a kwa bokhutlong go mo tlisetsang matlhotlhapelo.

▪ **Seane**

Thekeniki e, e tlhalositswe fa e le ya bogologolo, e khutshwafatsa puo, e bile e le bofitlha go tlhagisa maikutlo a a rileng. Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o raya Motlalepule a re:

Go siame, Motlalepule wa gaetsho, e se ke ya re
ka moso wa re, re go latlhile. Moennyana o pele
lobone lwa waabo (ts.2).

Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o dirisa puo e e bofitlha, e seng ya ka metlha ka go dirisa seane se: 'Moennyana o pele lobone lwa waabo' boemong jwa gore motho yo o eteletseng mongwe wa gaabo pele, gantsi ke ena a mo thusang fa a goroga fa a leng teng, gonne o tla bo a itse lefelo leo sentle. Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o khutshwafaditse puo e, ka go se dirise puo e e tlwaeleging. Ga a dirisa puo ya ka metlha, go ngoka mmuisi go batla go itse tse di tlileng go diragala kwa pele.

- **Lerui**

Lefoko le, le setse le tlhalositswe fa le dirisiwa go kaya thuo ya leina le le ruangwang nalo ke thuanirui. Gape go na le dithuanirui tse di tlhometsweng mo dikutung tsa maemedirui a kopanelo a setlhopha sa batho, ka le tsona di ka tlhagelela fa go buiwa ka ga thuo e e kopanetsweng.

Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o raya Motlalepule a re:

Go siame Motlalepule wa gaetsho, e se ke ya re ka moso wa re, re go lathile (ts.2).

Go tswa mo nopolong e e fa godimo, mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o dirisitse lerui “wa gaetsho” go tlhaola Motlalepule mo go ba bangwe. Go gatelela tlhaolo e, mokwadi o dirisetse thuanirui-wa, le leemedirui la kopanelo ya batho- ‘gaetsho’ go bopa “wa gaetsho”. “Wa gaetsho”: e lebagane le kutlwelobotlhoko gonne a leka go ngokela Motlalepule kwa go ena. Kgang e, e dira gore mmuisi le ene a mo utlwele botlhoko ka a lemoga boferefere jwa mosimane wa tedu tsa katse, yo o ratang go gogela Motlalepule kwa go ena.

- **Go fitlha sephiri**

Pharologantsho e, e tlhalositswe ka go dirisa dithekeniki di le tharo, e leng: ponelopele, sekai le leele.

- **Ponelopele**

Turco (1960:92), le Brooks le ba bangwe (1975:884) ba re ponelopele ke tiragalo e e diragalang mo tshimologong ya dikgang, mme e boelediwa kwa pele. BoBrooks (1975:884) ba gatelela se ka go re:

*Foreshadowing is the process of giving the reader
an imitation of some event that is to follow.*

Cohen (1973:185) le Serudu (1989:45) bona ba ruma kang e ka go re go na le ponelopele e mokwadi a e dirisang fa a rata go tlhagisa se se tlileng go diragala kwa bokhutlong le e e lemosang go le gonnye se se tlileng go diragala kwa pejana mo pading.

Malebela o raya Motlalepule a re:

O a batla ngwanaka. Mme selo o se batlang, se gare ga mpa ya lefatshe. Le gale e tla re tsatsi lengwe o ntse o tsamaya, o se bone o sa itse gore ke sone (ts.33).

Nopolo e, e tswa mo temaneng ya bobedi gona mo tsebeng eo, mme yona e lebagane le tiragalo ya go fitlha sephiri ga Motlalepule.

Tiragalo e, ya go fitlha sephiri e boa gape e diragala kwa tsebeng ya somamararo tharo, fa yona e tlhagisiwa ke mokwadi ka go re:

Ga nna jaaka Malebela a na a boletse. Motlha MmaMosidi a neng a jetse nala gae, a bona basimane ba Maikutlwane... mme ba gogwa ke mosimane yo moleele, yo o matsatsarapa. A lala a mo gopotse bosigo jotlhe, a eletsa e kete e kabo e le morwae wa matibola ntha... (ts.33).

Tiragalo e, e lebagane le go tshwara sephiri ga Motlalepule mo go mo tlišetsang matlhotlhapelo a botshelo jotlhe. Monyaise o dirisa thekeniki e, go godisa kgogedi ya mmuisi gore a batle go itse bokhutlo jwa ditiragalo.

Mokwadi o dirisa thekeniki e, go godisa semelo sa Motlalepule sa go fitlha sephiri seo se mo tlišetsang matlhotlhapelo a botshelo jotlhe.

Fa go ka tlhokomelwa sentle go tswa gona mo nopolong e, go tlhagelela thekeniki e nngwe gape, e leng ya 'sekai'. Sekai ke kemedi ya selo kgotsa tiragalo e e rileng e mokwadi a batlang go ipopela yona mo mogopolong wa gagwe (Mosehla (2000:15)).

Malebela o bua ka ga 'selo' jaaka sekai se se kayang morwa wa dikgora wa ga Motlalepule. Ke go re mokwadi o tshwantshanya dilo tse pedi, e leng, selo se se sa tsheleng le motho yo o tshelang, e leng, morwa wa ga Motlalepule, yo o kaiwang e le sephiri sa ga Motlalepule. Thekeniki e, e gatelela go fitlha sephiri ga Motlalepule, se se mo tlholelang manyaapelo kwa bokhutlong.

▪ **Leele**

Thekeniki e, e setse e tthalositswe fa e le puo e e bofitlha e e tlhagisang bokao jo bo farologaneng le se se buiwang. Ga se puo e e tlwaelegileng.

Malebela o raya Motlalepule a re:

Ngwanaka, o tla bona se o se lelelang. Mme ke
sisa manyaapelo... (ts.65).

Go tswa mo nopolong e e fa godimo, mokwadi o dirisitse leele 'go sisa manyaapelo', e leng, puo e e bofitlha, go tlhagisa bokao jo bo farologaneng le mafoko a a buiwang, e leng, go bona kutlobotlhoko e e leng puo e e tlwaelegileng, ya ka metlha. Seno se raya gore bokao jwa leele bo farologana le mafoko a a le bopang gonne ga se puo e e bonolo. Monyaise o itlhophela go dirisa puo e e bofitlha go tlhagisa sengwe se se botlhokwa, se a ratang gore mmuisi a se lemoge, e leng, go fitlha sephiri sa ga Motlalepule mo go mo tlholelang matlhotlhapelo kwa bokhutlong.

Mokwadi o dirisa thekeniki e, go gatelela semelo sa ga Motlalepule sa go fitlha sephiri se se lebaganeng le molaetsa wa padi e, e leng, matlhotlhapelo.

Malebela o raya Motlalepule a re:

O a batla mgwanaka. Mme selo o se batlang, se gare ga mpa ya lefatshe. Le gale e tla re tsatsi lengwe o ntse o tsamaya, o se bone, o sa itse gore ke sone (ts.33).

Fa Malebela a kopana le Motlalepule ba ne ba buisana ka tsela e:

Dumela, mosadi wa mmatli. O sa akgega? (ts.64).

le

Ngwanaka, o tla bona se o se lelelang. Mme ke sisa manyaapelo... (ts.65.).

Go ya ka puo ya ga Malebela go lemosegile gore go na le dithekeniki di le nne, e leng: modirisopego, kgelekiso (potso e e sa batlang karabo) ponelopele le tlogelo.

▪ **Modirisopego**

Thekeniki e, e tlhalositswe fa e le pego e e feletseng. Ke gore lediri kgotsa madiri a teng a ikemetse ka nosi.

Go tswa fa nopolong e e fa godimo go tla lemogiwa gore Malebela o dirisitse modirisopego fa a re: **O a batla ngwanaka. Mme selo o se batlang se gare ga mpa ya lefatshe.** Fa go ka sekasekiwa nopolong e, go tla lemogiwa gore e baakantswe go ya ka tsela ya pego. Modirisopego o, o na le lediri le le ikemetseng, e leng: “go batla” leo le boelediwaneng gabedi mo karolwaneng ya polelwana ya ga Malebela. Gape ke puo e e feletseng gonne ga e a ikaega ka mediriso e mengwe.

Maikaelelo a go boeletsa lediri le, ke go gatelela matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule tebang le go senka morwae wa dikgora.

Ka tsela e, thekeniki e, e diriseditswe go godisa kutlwelobotlhoko ya ga Motlalepule mabapi le morwae.

▪ **Kgelekiso**

Thekeniki e, e tthalositswe fa e le potso e e karabo ya yona e itsiweng. Potso e, e ka dirisiwa go gatelela ntlha nngwe e e botlhokwa e karabo ya yona e tshegetsang kang.

Malebela o dirisa kgelekiso fa a re:

O sa a kgega? (ts.64)

Fa go ka sekasekiwa nopollo e sentle go tla lemogiwa gore potso e Malebela a e botsang Motlalepule e na le karabo, e leng: Ee, Motlalepule o sa ntse a akgega. Go a gakgamatsa gore Malebela a botse potso e e nang le karabo e e itsiweng. O gatelela go tlhoka boiketlo ga Motlalepule mo botshelong. Kwa bokhutlong o tsena mo mathateng.

Monyaise o rulagantse dikgang ka tsela e, go godisa kutlwelobotlhoko ya mmuisi mo go Motlalepule.

Motlalepule ke moanelwa yo o nang le matlhoko a a mmakelang matlhotlhapelo a botshelo jotlhe.

- **Tlogelo**

Togelo e tlhalositswe fa e le tsela e mokwadi a e dirisang go tlogela go tlhalosa dikgang ka botlalo kgotsa tsela ya go tlhalosa dikgang ka go fapoga. Maikaelelo ke go potlakisa nako.

Go tswa fa nolong e e neilweng fa godimo mokwadi o tlogela dikgang kgotsa diphatlha tsa tiragalo gore mmuisi a ikakanyetse tsona ka boena. Tiragalo e tlogetswe ka bomo gonne mokwadi a itse gore fa mmuisi a ka tswelala pele go buisa padi, o tla itse kakanyo e e tlogetsweng. Ka jalo, mokwadi o tlogetse tiragalo e, ya loso lwa ga Motlalepule go sutisa nako ya go anega gore a kgone go fitlha kwa morerong wa padi ka bonako. Tiragalo e e tlogetsweng e na le kgogedi gonne mmuisi o batla go itse gore dikgang di feletse jang. Ke go re botlhokwa jwa dikgang tseo bo ntse jang.

4.5. TSHOSOBANYO

Mo karolong e, go sekasekilwe dipharologantsho di le tharo tse di amanang le go tlhoka kitso, go tshwara sephiri le kutlwelobotlhoko ya ga Motlalepule jaaka e le motho yo o tlhokang makoa. Dithekeniki tse di lebaganeng le thulaganyo ya ka fa baanelwa ba bangwe ba tlhalosang semelo sa ga Motlalepule ke: lesupi, lelatlhelwa, motifi, seane, lerui, ponelopele, sekai, leele, modirisopego, kgelekiso le tlogelo.

Go lemogilwe gore modirisopego le kgelekiso di diriseditswe go godisa semelo sa go fitlha sephiri le kutlwelobotlhoko ya ga

Motlalepule mo go morwae wa dikgora. Fa dithekeniki tsa lesupi, lelatlhelwa, seane, lerui, ponelopele, sekai, leele le tlogelo tsona di diriseditswe go ngoka mmuisi go buisetsa kwa pele go batla go itse bokhutlo jwa matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule.

Fa go tthalosiwa semelo sa ga Motlalepule ka puo ya mokwadi go dirisitswe dipharolontsho di le tlhano, e leng, bontle, go tlhoka lesego, go sotlega, bohumanegi le kutlwelobotlhoko.

Go tswelera pele mokwadi o tlhagisa dithekeniki di le somepedi mo pharologantshong ya bontle, e leng, tsepamiso, phapologantsho, kgotlhang, lerui, letlhaodi, tebelelo, nyenyefatso, pheteletso, kemedi, leele, ponelopele le tshwantshanyo. Mo phapologantshong ya go tlhoka lesego mokwadi o dirisitse dithekeniki di le thataro, e leng, ponelopele, tshotlo, phapologantsho, mothofatso, tshwantshanyo le tlogelo. Mo go ya go sotla gone go tlhagelela dithekeniki di le somenngwe, e leng, sekai, tshotlo, motifi, mmuaesi, poeletso, leele, kobiso, seane, phapologantsho, tshwantshanyo le pheteletso. Pharologantsho ya bohumanegi mokwadi o dirisitse dithekeniki di le tharo, e leng, pheteletso, modirisotaelo le papiso. Mo pharologantshong ya kutlwelobotlhoko go dirisitswe dithekeniki di le tharo, e leng, potso e e sa tlhokeng karabo, leele le tlogelo.

Pharologantsho ya bontle e botlhokwa thata ka gonne e rulagantswe ka dithekeniki di le dintsi go gaisa diphapologantsho tse dingwe.

Fa go sekasekiwa puo le ditiro tsa ga Motlalepule go dirisitswe e le nngwe, e leng, tshiamo, mme ya sekasekiwa ka dithekeniki di le nne, e

leng, modirisotaelo, modirisopego, leina le mmuaesi. Fa go lekolwa puo le ditiro tsa baanelwa ba bangwe go dirisitswe diphapologantsho tse pedi, e leng, go tlhoka kitso le go tshwara sephiri. Phapologantsho ya go tlhoka kitso e rulagantswe ka dithekeniki di le tharo, e leng, lelatlhelwa, lesupi, motifi, seane le lerui. Mo phapologantshong ya go fitlha sephiri mokwadi o dirisitse dithekeniki di le tlhano, e leng, ponelopele, leele, modirisopego, kgelekiso le tlogelo.

Phapologantsho ya go fitlha sephiri e botlhokwa go gaisa tse dingwe gonne e dirilwe ke dithekeniki tse dintsi go gaisa tse dingwe fa go lekolwa puo le ditiro tsa baanelwa ba bangwe.

KGAOLO YA BOTLHANO

5.1. SEMELO SA MOLWANTSHI

5.1.1. Matseno

Jaanong patlisiso e tlile go sekaseka semelo sa ga molwantshi.

Molwantshi: Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng/tedu tsa katse/Rra-Modise

Go tla tlhokomelwa ka moo mokwadi a tlhalosang molwantshi ka teng jaaka:

- Motho yo o nang le maemo
- Motho yo o nang le makoa

5.1.2. Molwantshi jaaka motho yo o nang le maemo

Tshekatsheko ya tlhaloso ya semelo sa molwantshi jaaka motho wa maemo a a kwa godimo e tla sala morago lenaane le le latelang:

- Puo ya mokwadi
 - Puo ya moanelwa
 - Puo ya baanelwa ba bangwe.
-
- **Puo ya mokwadi**

Fa go sekasekiwa semelo sa ga molwantshi go tla tlhokomelwa gore mokwadi ga a se tlhalosa ka botlalo gonne a sa bua go le gontsi ka ga gagwe.

Mokwadi o kwadile ka ga molwantshi mo tsebeng ya ntlha le ya bobedi fa Motlalepule a kopana le mosimane yo o tedutsebeng:

... (Motlalepule) a utlwa legwaragwara (mosimane yo o tedutsebeng) le mmitsa ka `ina la kwa gae, a tshoga. Ya nna gone a gakalogelwang ngwana wa ga monnamogolo Setshose-lekgwelwa la mosimane ... a gakologelwa gore morwa Setshose o tedu tsa katse, mme yo o tedutsebeng ... (Motlalepule) o ne a se lobaka lo lolleele mo Gouteng, a sa itse mekgwa ya batho ba Gouteng... (ts.2).

le

Mo tsebeng ya bone Monyaise o senola mosimane yo o tedutsebeng yo, jaanong e le mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse:

Thandi o ne a ntse le lekolwane la tedu tsa katse. Fa Motlalepule a tsena la ema, la obega jaaka tlhaka lwa noka, le mo dumedisa Sefora (ts.4).

le

Mo tsebeng ya borobongwe le ya lesome mokwadi o tthalosa Rra-Modise yo e leng ena mosimane yo o tedutsebeng/tehu tsa katse ka go re:

Ga fologa, monna a le moleele, a le matsatsarapa, e le MoAferika wa tsopa la maloba. A tsamaya a gabaletse, gonne o na a tlhota oto la molema, mme a sa rate gore batho ba lemoge, a le lobadi fa godimo ga itlho la moja; a ka nna masome a mane le motso. A salwa morago ke mosadi a le sekiritlana le mosimane wa nyaga tse di supang (dits.9-10).

RraModise o isa Modise (lesea la ga Motlalepule kwa ga rremogolo Ofentse gore a ye go golela kwa teng. Ga a mo ise kwa ga gaabo. Ga a batle gore batho ba itse gore lesea le, ke la gagwe la madi le nama. Ke ka ntlha e mokwadi a reng:

E ne e le nyaga tse pedi rraagwe a sa mmone, a godile, a le dikgoka, a sa tlhole a le dintha jaaka pele ... Le gale ... mme rraagwe a tlhajwa ke ditlhong fa a mmona, gonne o ne a sa rate go utlwa batho ba re o tshwana nae ka bolelee (ts.36).

le

Rra-Modise e ne e le moeteledipele wa somo la banna ba ipitsa Baitiredi, ba direla mo Moranodi o

kopanelang gone le Monyane, ka fa ga Masepala.

Ga twe o ne a se ka a nyenya (ts.34).

Mokwadi o tthalosa semelo sa molwantshi ka mofuta o le mongwe wa pharologantsho, e leng, o o botlhokwa fela, e leng: boeteledipele gonne a sa bue go le gontsi ka ena.

- **Boeteledipele**

Mokwadi o senola boeteledipele jwa ga mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse/ tsedutsebeng /RraModise ka go re:

RraModise e ne e le moeteledipele wa 'somo la banna ba ipitsa Baitiredi, ba direla mo Moranodi o kopanelang gone le Monyane, ka fa ga Masepala. Ga twe o ne a se ka a nyenya; mme nna nkile ka mmona a leka go tshega (ts.34).

Go tswa fa nopolong e e fa godimo go dirisitswe dithekiniki di le pedi, e leng: **modirisopego** le **tebelelo**.

- **Modirisopego**

Modirisopego o dirisetswa go bega tiragalo e e rileng, mme o kgona go tlhagelela ka dipaka tsotlhe: pakajaanong, pakafetileng le pakatlang. O ikemetse ka boona. Ke go re ga wa itshega ka mediriso e mengwe.

Go tswa fa nopolong e e fa godimo, modirisopego ke: RraModise e ne e le moeteledipele. Lediri le le begang tiragalo e e fetileng ke: e ne e le moeteledipele. Tiragalo e, e tlhaloganyega sentle gonne lediri le le tlhalosa tiro e mosimane yo o 'tedutsebeng/'tedu tsa katse /RraModise a neng a e dira, e leng, ya go etelela Baitiredi pele. Se se ka elwang tlhoko ke go re pego e, e feleletse, ga e batle maitshetlego a a rileng. Ke puo e e bontshang tlhaloso e e feleletseng, e e tlhaloganyegang sentle.

Mokwadi o dirisa thekeniki e, go senolela mmuisi maemo a a kwa godimo a motho yo o tlhagisetsang Motlalepule matlhotlhapelo mo botshelong. Seno se lemosa gore le fa a na le maemo a boeteledipele fela ga a siama.

▪ Tebelelo

Thekeniki e, e tlhalositswe fa e le tsela e e gatelelang fela se se buiwang ke mokwadi, moanedi kgotsa moanelwa wa ntlha, wa bobedi, wa boraro le boanedi ka kakaretso, go senolela mmuisi le go mo netefaletsa dikgang.

Mokwadi o dirisa tebelelo ya moanedi e le motho wa ntlha fa a re: '... nna nkile ka mmona a leka go tshega'. Dikgang tse tsa go senola semelo sa ga RraModise, ga di tle ka mokwadi kgotsa baanelwa ba bangwe, di tla ka moanedi, e le motho wa ntlha. Mokwadi o dirisitse moanedi yo, gonne e le ena yo itseng moanelwa yo, go mo gaisa. Mokwadi o lemoga gore yo o itseng maitsholo a ga RraModise, go gaisa baanelwa ba ba tshelang le ene, ke moanelwa e le motho wa

ntlha. Go godisa go se tshege ga RraModise, go bonala le go tlhaloganyega fa go tlhalosiwa ke motho yo o mo itseng go gaisa ba bangwe.

Monyaise o dirisitse thekeniki e, ka go e rulaganya ka tsela ya sebui kgotsa motho wa ntlha gore mmuisi a kgone go tlhaloganya boeteledipele jwa moanelwa yo, sentle. O bonala a le bogale ka tsela e, batho ga ba itsalanye nae.

- **Moanelwa yo o nang le makoa**

RraModise jaaka baanelwa botlhe, o na le makoa. Fa go tlhalosiwa makoa a gagwe, go tllile go salwa morago lenaane le:

- Puo ya mokwadi.
- Puo ya moanelwa.
- Puo ya baanelwa ba bangwe.

- **Puo ya mokwadi**

Fa go sekasekiwa semelo sa molwantshi go ya ka moo se tlhalosiwang ke mokwadi go tla lemogiwa gore go dirisitswe fela pharologantsho e le nngwe fela e kgolo e leng: go se siame. Ka fa tlase ga yona, go na le pharologantsho e nnye: 'lonyatso'. 'Go se siame'. Pharologantsho e, e tlhalositswe ka dithekeniki di le thataro, e leng: **Tshotlo, motifi, modirisotatelano, tshwantshanyo, phapologantsho le tlogelo.**

- **Tshotlo**

Thekeniki e, e tthalositswe fa e le tiriso ya lefoko kgotsa mafoko a a utlwisang botlhoko go tthagisa lonyatso kgotsa tlontlololo ya sengwe. Go dirisa mafoko a a sotlang ka tsela ya go rogakana le go senola boelele. Maikaelelo ke go ripitlanya seriti sa motho yo o sotliwang.

Go tswa fa nopolong e e fa godimo lefoko le: 'legwaragwara', le botlhokwa ka gonne le lebagane le tiro e e sa siamang e e dirwang ke mosimane yo o tedutsebeng. Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o beteletse Motlalepule. Ga go gakgamatse fa go twe ke legwaragwara. Mokwadi o godisa bobbe jwa mosimane yo o 'tedutsebeng', ka tsela ya go mo sotla, ka go mmita legwaragwara ke go re lenaba, leferefere le molotsana.

Ka tsela eo, mmuisi o simolola go lemoga makoa a mosimane yo o tedutsebeng, a a lebaganeng le petelelo. Ka jalo, go nna bokete mo go mmuisi go itsalanya le moanelwa wa mofuta o ka gonne a dira tiro e e sa amogelegeng mo morafeng.

▪ **Motifi**

Thekeniki e, e tthalositswe fa e le poeletso ya leina, sekapolelo kgotsa polelo mo setlhangweng. Ke go boelela ga lefoko kgotsa polelo e le nngwe gantsintsi maikaelelo e le go gatelela se mokwadi a ratang go se tthalosa.

Monyaise a re:

...(Motlalepule) a utlwa legwaragwara (mosimane yo o tedutsebeng) le le mmita ka 'ina la kwa gae, a tshoga. Ya nna gona a gakologelwang ngwana wa monnamogolo Setshose- lekgwela la mosimane ...(Motlalepule a gakologelwa gore morwa Setshose o tedu tsa katse, mme yo o tedutsebeng... O ne a se lobaka lo lolele mo Gouteng, a sa itse mekgwa ya batho ba Gouteng (ts.2).

Fa go ka buisiwa nopollo e e fa godimo gape, go tla lemogiwa gore go na le mafoko a le mararo a a boeleditsweng go gaisa a mangwe, e leng: **a, gakologelwa le o tedu**. Jaanong go tlike go tlhokomelwa botlhokwa jwa_ona mo temaneng e e tlhalosang bobbe jwa mosimane yo o tedutsebeng. Mokwadi o boeletsa **a** gatlhano, e e dirisitsweng jaaka thuanyesediri e bile e emela leina Motlalepule go gatelela tlalelo e moanelwa yo a iphitlhelang a le mo go yona ka ntlha ya go se itse Gouteng le go tlhoka motho yo o ka mo thusang. O gakologelwa mosimane yo o tedutsebeng gonne a dirile tiro e mpe ya go mmetelela. **O tedu** le yona o e boeeditse gabedi, go gatelela go iphetola popego ka go tlogela ditedu mo dikarolong tse di farologaneng tsa mmele. Go dirisa tedutsebeng le tedu tsa katse, gore a kgone go betelela Motlalepule, mme a se ke a itsiwe. Go iphetola popego ga motho yo go lebagane le bonweenwee jo bo tlhalosang semelo sa gagwe jaaka molwantshi.

Ka jalo, tiriso ya thekiniki e, e tsamaelana le go se siame ga mosimane yo o tedutsebeng go go tlholang gore mmuisi a se itsalanye nae.

▪ **Modirisotatelano ‘consecutive mood’**

Lombard le ba bangwe (1993:152) ba tlhalosa modirisotatelano ka go re:

The consecutive mood is a dependent predicative mood. The consecutive verb indicates an action or process which follows another action/ other actions. The other action(s) may have been mentioned in the previous sentence or may be mentioned in the same sentence or may even be merely known to the listener / reader and speaker / writer. The tense of the action(s) on which the consecutive verb is based, is of importance for the translation of the consecutive verb. The verb in the consecutive indicates chronological succession and does not indicate tense itself.

Boratorii ba, ba kaya fa modirisotatelano o le modiriso o o sa ikemeleng ka nosi. O nna teng ka ntlha ya mediriso e mengwe jaaka modirisopego. Lediri le le dirisiwang fa, le na le tiro e e latelwang ke e nngwe. Modiriso o, o gatelela tatelano ya diriragalo e seng paka ya lediri. BoVan Wyk (1992:108) ba tlhalosa kakanyo e, ka go re modirisotatelano o lemogega ka tatelano ya thuanyisediri e ka nako nngwe e emelang dikarolwana tsa lerui. Monyaise a re:

Fa Motlalepule a tsena la ema, la obega... le mo dumedisa (ts.4).

Fa go ka sekasekiwa puo e, ya ga Monyaise go tllile go lemogiwa gore go na le dintlha tse pedi, e leng, (a) go se ikemele ka nosi ga modiriso le (b) ga ditiragalo.

▪ **Go se ikemele ka nosi**

Go tswa fa nopolong e e fa godimo, go dirisitswe lediri la modirisotatelano, e leng: 'Fa... a tsena'. Go tla lemogiwa gore modiriso o, ga wa ikemela ka nosi. Ke go re tiro ya ona ga e a felelela; ga e kgone go naya polelo e, bokao jo bo feleletseng. Fa go ka tlhokomelwa ke madiri a mararo a modirisopego, e leng: **la ema, la obega, le mo dumedisa**. Seno se kaya gore modiriso o, o ikaegile ka modirisopego.

▪ **Tatelano ya ditiragalo**

Go tswela pele, modiriso o, o na le ditiragalo di le nne tseo di latelanang. Ka fa morago ga tiragalo ya '**go tsena**', go na le ditiragalo dingwe tse di latelang tiragalo eo, e leng: '**go ema**', '**obega**' le '**go dumedisa**'. Go tla tlhokomelwa gore tiragalo ya ntlha: **Fa...** a tsena, ga e tlhologanyege gonne e le polelwana tlhalosi ya nako, ka jalo, ga e a felela go naya polelo e, bokao jo bo tletseng. Botlhokwa jwa tatelano ya ditiragalo tse ke go gatelela tiro e e dirwang ke mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse. Mosola wa thekeniki e, ke go tswaledisa pele makoa a mosimane yo o tedu tsa katse.

▪ Tshwantshanyo

Thekeniki e, e kaya go bapisiwa ga dilo tse pedi tse di sa tshwaneng. Ke sekapuo se ka sona selo se tshwantshiwang kgotsa se bapisiwang le se sengwe ka maikaelelo a go bopa setshwantsho se mmuisi a ka se bonang ka leitlho la semowa.

Monyaise a re:

Fa Motlalepule a tsena la ema, la obega jaaka
lotlhaka lwa noka le mo dumedisa Sefora (ts.4).

Fa, go buiwa ka lekau la tedu tsa katse gore ke 'lotlhaka lwa noka' lo lo obegileng. Go tlile go tlhokomelwa gore ke ka ntlha ya eng mokwadi a sa re ke lotlhaka lwa noka lo lo tlhamaletseng fela a re ke lo lo obegileng. Go kobega mo ga lotlhaka go amana le ditiro tsa lekau la tedu tsa katse. Ga a dire ditiro tse di tlhamaletseng gonne o beteletse Motlalepule.

Mosola wa thekeniki e, ke go tlhagisa makoa a lekau le le tedu tsa katse a a lebaganeng le petelelo, ya ga Motlalepule.

▪ Phapologantsho

Thekeniki e, e bapisa dikakanyo, dilo kgotsa batho ba ba fetang ba babedi ba ba farologaneng, maikaelelo e le go tlhalosa kang kgotsa tiragalo ka tsela ya kgogedi.

Monyaise a re:

(RraModise) A tsamaya a gabaletse, gonne o na a tlhotsa oto la molema... ke mosimane wa nyaga tse di supa. Monnamogolo Ofentse o na a sa bolo go kua mokgosi gore morwadie a mo thuse ka modisa. Jaanong o na a mo leretse mosimane Modise (dits.9-10).

Go tswa fa nopolong e e fa godimo, mokwadi o bapisa batho ba babedi, e leng: RraModise/mosimane yo o tedu tsebeng/tedu tsa katse le Modise/Omphile, lesea le Motlalepule a le imileng ka tsela ya petelelo. Go tla lemogiwa gore baanelwa ba babedi ba ba farologana ka dingwaga di le somamararo nne. Pharogantsho e kgolo e ya dingwaga e bontsha go farologana thata ga batho ba babedi ba, gonne yo mongwe ke ngwana fa yo mongwe e le motho yo mogolo. Go tloga mo, go tlile go tlhokomelwa ditiro tsa bona. Ditiro tsa motho yo mogolo yo, RraModise, yo e leng, mosimane wa tedutsebeng/tedu tsa katse di lebagane le petelelo ya ga Motlalepule kwa phaposing ya ga Thandi. Ditiragalo tsa ngwana, e leng, Modise yo o itsiweng e le Omphile tsona di lebagane le go disa dikgomo tsa ga rremogolo Ofentse. Jaanong fa go ka bapisiwa ditiragalo tsa baanelwa ba babedi ba, di lemosega di lebagane le bosula le tshiamo. Tsa yo mogolo di lebagane le bosula fa tsa monnye e le tsa tshiamo.

Mokwadi o bapisa batho ba babedi ba, go godisa makoa a ga RraModise ka tsela ya go bapisa motho yo mogolo le yo monnye.

- **Tlogelo**

Thekeniki e, ke tsela e mokwadi a tlogelang go bua ditiragalo dingwe tsa sekwalwa sa gagwe ka go dirisa dikgala kgotsa diphatlha, fa dingwe go sa kwalwe sepe, mme nako nngwe go tlogelwa tlhogo ya leina, lefoko kgotsa mafoko. Maikaelelo e le go potlakisa nako ya ditiragalo le go tlisa kgogedi kgotsa go gatelela kgang e e rileng.

Monyaise a re:

E ne e le nyaga tse pedi rraagwe a sa mmone, a godile, a le dikgoka ,a sa tlhole a le dintha jaaka pele...le gale...mme rraagwe a tlhajwa ke ditlhong fa a mmona gonne a ne a sa rate go utlwa batho ba re o tshwana nae ka boleleele (ts.36).

Go tswa fa nopolong e e fa godimo, go tla tlhokomelwa gore mokwadi o tlogetse ditiragalo tse pedi: (a) Go gola ga Modise le (b) O tshwana ga Modise le RraModise.

- **Go gola ga Modise**

Rraagwe Modise, e leng, RraModise/mosimane yo o tedutsebeng/tehu tsa katse, o tsere Modise kwa ntlogodisetsong a le dingwaga di le supa. A mo isa kwa Matile, kwa ga rremogolo Ofentse. Fa a tloga kwa toropong, Gouteng le go ya kwa magaeng go na le ditiragalo tse di

diregileng mo tseleng, tse mokwadi a di tlogetseng. Ditiragalo dingwe tse di diregileng mo tseleng fa a boela Gouteng, di tlogetswe. Go tloga mo dinyageng tse di supa, go fitlha mo dingwageng tse di robongwe, go na le ditiragalo dingwe gape, tse di diregileng, mme mokwadi o di tlogetse. Tsona, ditiragalo tse, di lebagane le go gola ga Modise.

- **Go tshwana ga Modise le RraModise**

Fa Modise a godile a le dingwaga di le robongwe o similola go tshwana le rraagwe ka boleele. Mokwadi ga a tlhalose go gola mo ka botlalo, gonne o tlogela ditiragalo dingwe tse di ka bong di diregile mo go goleng ga gagwe. Mokwadi o bona e kete ditiragalo tse, ga di botlhokwa. Ka tsela e, go ka twe o potlakisa nako gore dikgang tse a kwalang ka ga tsone di fele ka pele. Karolo ya thulaganyo ya thekeniki e, e lebagane le kgogedi.

- **Puo le ditiro tsa molwantshi**

Fa go ka buisiwa padi e: *Omphile Umphi Modise* sentle, go tla lemogiwa gore mokwadi ga a tlhagisa puo le ditiro tsa mosimane yo o tedutsebeng/tedu tsa katse/RraModise ka botlalo. Go tlhagisitswe dikao di se kae mo tsebeng ya ntlha le ya bobedi fela, tse di tlhagisang pharologantsho e le nngwe fela ya lonyatso e e tlhalositsweng ka dithekeniki di le tharo tse di botlhokwa, e leng: modirisotaelo, tshotlo le lenalana.

Mosimane wa tedu tsa katse/tedutsebeng a re:

Tsaya, ke go ntshe motho. A ntsha letlhare la ponto a re o le naya mosetsana. A le gana (ts.1).

Go tla lemogiwa gore nopollo e, e rulagantswe ka dithekeniki tse tharo tse di botlhokwa, e leng: modirisotaelo, tshotlo le lenalana, tse di tlhalosang lonyatso lwa ga mosimane wa tedutsebeng/te du tsa katse/RraModise.

- **Modirisotaelo**

Thekeniki e, e tlhalositswe fa e le modiriso o o laelang gore go dirwe sengwe kgotsa tiragalo e e rileng. Go ka laelwa motho a le mongwe fela kgotsa ba bantsi.

Fa go ka tlhokomelwa nopollo e e fa godimo, go tla lemogiwa go laelwa Motlalepule, e leng, motho a le mongwe fela. Tiragalo e e lebaganeng le taelo ke: 'Tsaya ke go ntshe motho'. Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng/te du tsa katse/RraModise o kaya fa Motlalepule e se motho. O mo tlhalosa gore ke selo. Tsela e a mo tlhalosang ka teng, e bontsha gore o a mo nyatsa. Ka ntlha e, mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o tsaya Motlalepule gore ga se motho, e bontsha bokoa jwa gagwe.

Ka go dirisa thekeniki e, mokwadi o godisa lenyatso la mosimane yo o tedutsebeng/te du tsa katse/RraModise.

- **Tshotlo**

Thekeniki e, e tllhalositswe fa e le tiriso ya lefoko kgotsa mafoko a a utlwisang bothoko, go tllhagisa lenyatso kgotsa tlontlololo ya sengwe. Maikaelelo e le go nyatsa seriti sa motho yo o sotliwang. Fa go ka tllhokomelwa nopollo e e fa godimo, go tla lemogiwa gore mosimane yo o tedutsebeng/tedu tsa katse /RraModise o sotla Motlalepule ka go re; ‘... ke go ntshe motho’. Seno se kaya gore Motlalepule ga se motho ke selo. Go lemogega gore mafoko a a tshotlo a senolela mmuisi makoa a ga molwantshi a lenyatso, ka go nyenyefatsa le go tllhokisa Motlalepule maemo, ka ntlha ya mafoko a a ripitlang seriti sa gagwe.

Ka go dirisa thekeniki e, mokwadi o gatelela makoa a a lebaganeng le go nyatsa batho.

- **Aposeterofi /Lenalana (Kgakgamalo)**

Abrams (1993:182) o tllhalosa kgakgamalo/aposeterofi ka go re:

An apostrophe is a direct and explicit address either to an absent person or an abstract or nonhuman entity. Often the effect is of high formality or else of a sudden emotional impetus.

Puo e, e gatelela gore kgakgamalo/aposeterofi e lebane le tllhaloso e e lolameng ya pegelo e e ikemetseng ka nosi go diragatsa maikutlo a mmui.

Preminger le ba bangwe (1986:14) bona ba oketsa kakanyo e ka go re:

A device which consists in addressing a dead or absent person, an animal, a thing, or an abstract quality or idea as if were alive, present and capable of understanding.

Boratori ba, ba kaya gore ke sediriswa se mokwadi a se dirisang fa a batla go naya batho puo kgotsa fa a lebisa molaetsa mo selong. Ke ka ntlha e Wales(1995:32) a buang ka tlholego ya thekeniki e, ya lenalana ka go re e dirisiwa go tshwana le fa mokwadi a batla go fura lela babuisi kgotsa bareetsi a bua le ba bangwe kgotsa ka selo sengwe fela. Ka tsela e, mokwadi o kgona go tlogela babuisi ba gagwe metsotsonyana a bua le batho ba bangwe ba ba sa amegeng mo sekwalweng seo. Wales o gatelela tiro ya thekeniki e, ka go re:

Apostrophe is typically exclamation and emotive.

Thekeniki ya lenalana e bontsha kgakgamalo ya nnete go tthagisa maikutlo a a bokete.

Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o raya Motlalepule a re:

Tsaya ke go ntshe motho! (ts.1).

Fa go tlhokomelwa nopolo e sentle, go tla lemogiwa gore go na le puisano e e rileng magareng ga batho ba babedi, e leng, mosimane yo o tedutsebeng/te du tsa katse/RraModise le Motlalepule. Mosimane yo o tedutsebeng o bua le Motlalepule yo o sa mo arabeng. Motlalepule

ga a mo arabe, ka ntlha ya gore mo go ena ga se motho wa sepe, o tshwana le selo. Go se arabe ga gagwe go tlhola kgakgamalo. Kgakgamalo e, e lebagane le puo ya mosimane yo o tedutsebeng, lebaganeng le go se kaye Motlalepule e le motho. O didimala ka ntlha ya tshotlo e e buiwang eo.

Thekeniki e, e tlhalosa lenyatso la mosimane yo o tedutsebeng. Ka jalo, lenyatso le, le lebagane le makoa a gagwe.

5.2. TSHOSOBANYO

Mo karolong e, go sekasekilwe pharologantsho e le nngwe fela ya botlhokwa e e dirisitsweng ke mokwadi e leng: boeteledipele; jo bo tlhalositsweng ke dithekeniki di le pedi, e leng, modirisopego le tebelelo. Maikaelelo ke go gatelela boeteledipele jwa molwantshi.

Fa padi e, e ka buisiwa ka kelotlhoko go tla lemogiwa gore puo ya moanelwa le puo le ditiro tsa baanelwa ba bangwe ga di a tlhalosiwa tebang le go lwantshwa ga Motlalepule.

Fa go sekasekiwa gore Molwantshi e leng: mosimane yo o tedutsebeng/teedu tsa katse/RraModise, ke moanelwa yo o nang le makoa. Go dirisitswe pharologantsho e le nngwe e e tlhalositsweng ka dithekeniki di le thataro, e leng: tshotlo, motifi, modirisotatelano, tshwantshanyo, phapologantsho le tlogelo.

Go lemogilwe gore thekeniki ya tshotlo e diriseditswe go godisa bobbe jwa mosimane yo o tedutsebeng/teedu tsa katse/RraModise. Fa

dithekeniki tsa motifi, modirisotatelano, tshwantshanyo, phapologantsho tsona di tlhagisa makoa a moanelwa yo le go a godisa. Thekeniki ya tlogelo yona e tlhola kgogedi mo setlhangweng gore mmuisi a buisetse kwa pele gore a kgone go itse bokhutlo jwa ditiragalo.

Fa go sekasekiwa lonyatso lwa ga RraModise mo bathong ba bangwe, go senoga bokoa jwa gagwe. Pharologantsho e, e tlhalositswe ka dithekeniki tse tharo tse di botlhokwa, e leng: modirisotaelo, tshotlo le kgakgamalo/aposeterofi.

Go lemogilwe gore thekeniki ya modirisotaelo e diriseditswe go godisa lenyatso la ga RraModise ka go ritla seriti sa ga Motlalepule ka go re o tshwana le selo. Fa dithekeniki tsa tshotlo le kgakgamalo/aposeterofi tsona di gatelela makoa a a lebaganeng le moanelwa yo, ka kgakgamalo.

KGAOLO YA BORATARO

6.1. BOKHUTLO

6.1.1. Matseno

Go ya go sosobanngwa dikgaolo tse tlhano tsa tshekatsheko e.

6.1.2. Kgaolo ya ntlha

Mo kgaolong e, go sekasekilwe botlhokwa jwa ga Monyaise tebang le dikwalwa tsa Setswana. Monyaise o kwadile ditlhangwa di le mmalwa tse di buang ka ga morero wa makgoeng. Dingwe tsa ditlhangwa tse ga di a gatisiwa. Ka tsela e, Monyaise o botlhokwa thata mo hisetoring ya ditlhangwa tsa Setswana. O tlhotlheeditse bakwadi ba bantsi ba Setswana, jaaka Mekgwe fa a tla kwala ‘Masaikategang a magodimo’. Go tswelala pele kgaolo e, e tlhalositse botlhokwa jwa maikaelelo a patlisiso e. Go tlhokometsewe gape le ditiro tsa basekaseki ba ba sekasekileng *Omphile Umphi Modise*.

Tshekatsheko ya ga Malope e lemositse fa a bapisa dipharologantsho tsa ga D.P.S Monyaise. Mogapi ena, o sekaksekile puo e e bofitlha ya ga Monyaise. Pretorius ena o lemositse gore Monyaise o dirisitse puo ya poko, le gore setlhangwa sa *Omphile Umphi Modise* se tswa mo toropong ya ga Monyaise. Manyaka o senotse fa bokwadi jwa ga Monyaise bo tlhotlheeditse bakwadi ba bangwe go kwala ka go tsaya setaele sa gagwe. Mo tlhotlhomisong ya ga Shole, go sekasekilwe gape puo e e bofitlha ya ga Monyaise.

Malimabe ena, o sekasekile diteng le matlalo a mabedi a setlhangwa, e leng, poloto le setaele. Ka tsela e, go lemogilwe gore dipatlisiso tsa basekaseki ba, ga di a tthomamisa diteng le poloto go tlhokometswe dimelo tsa baanelwabagolo fela. Ka jalo, di ile go batlisisiwa mo tshekatshekong e.

Go bonagetse maikaelelo a sentle ka jalo go tthalositswe le dikgopolo tse di botlhokwa tsa go amana le patlisiso, e leng, matlhotlhapelo, masisapelo 'pathose', padithuto, padiboitsholo le bokgarakgatshegikwalwa / pikaresiki.

Mo patlisisong e go latetswe mekgwa e le mebedi ya dipatlisiso, e bong, go tthalosa le go ranola. Go tthalosa go naya dipharologantsho tsa se se tthalosiwang fa go ranola gona go golagantswe le mesola ya dipharologantsho tse tsa go senolwa mo patlisisong e.

Go tthalositswe fa patlisiso e, e latetse mmotlolo o o kgethegileng wa Boanedi go ya ka tthaloso ya Groenewald le Mojalefa. Go tthalositswe matlalo a mararo a sekwalwa, e leng, letlalo la diteng, la thulaganyo le la setaele, le fa e le gore letlalo la setaele ga le a tthalosiwa ka botlalo ka gone le sa golegane thata le patlisiso e. Letlalo le, le tthalositswe fela ka fa e le karolo ya sebopego sa setlhangwa.

6.1.3. Kgaolo ya bobedi

Mo kgaolong e go tthalositswe kakaretso ya diteng tsa padi e *Omphile Umphi Modise*, go sedimosetsa mmuisi ka se go buiwang ka ga sona, le tthaloso ya setlhogo sa *Omphile Umphi Modise* seo se

lebaganeng le matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule gape le tthaloso ya dielemente tse nne tsa diteng, e leng, baanelwa, ditiragalo, nako le lefelo.

Mo go baanelwa go tlhokometswe kamano magareng ga baanelwabagolo le baanelwapotlana ka go latela lenaane la tebagano, bokgontshi, boganetsi, bothusi, le bothusegi. Go lemogilwe fa go na le kamano e e rileng magareng ga moganediwa jaaka mothusi 'assistant' le moganetsi jaaka twantshi 'resistant' ba *Omphile Umphi Modise*. Bothusi ba ga moganetsi, bo kailwe jaaka bothusi ba ga moganediwa, mme boganetsi ba ga moganediwa e le bothusi jwa ga moganetsi.

Ditiragalo le tsona di sekasekilwe fa di na le mefuta e le mebedi, e leng, ditiragalo tse di botlhokwa tse dikgolo/ditiragalo tsa tshwanelo le ditiragalotlaleletso. Mofuta o wa ditiragalotshwanelo o arogantswe ka dikarolo di le tharo, e leng, ditiragalo tsa ntlha, tsa fa gare le tsa bofelo. Fa go *Omphile Umphi Modise* tiragalo tshwanelo ya ntlha ke loeto go ya Gouteng, tiragalotshwanelo ya fa gare e lebagantswe le mathata a ga Motlalepule. Tiragalotshwanelo ya bofelo ke matlhotlhapelo a ga Motlalepule. Mofuta wa ditiragalopotlana ona o lebagantswe le phetogo ya ditiragalo fa di amangwa le moanelwa, nako le lefelo.

Tikologo le yona e tthalositswe fa e na le dikarolwana di le pedi, e leng, nako le lefelo. Nako yona e arogantswe ka mefuta e meraro, e leng, nako e e rileng, ya ditiragalo le ya tsa loago. Mofuta wa nako e e rileng o golagantswe le nako e e akanngwang e e dirisitsweng ke Monyaise mo pading ya *Omphile Umphi Modise*. Nako ya ditiragalo

yona e dirisitswe ke mokwadi mo pading e. Nako ya tsa loago yona e nnile e e bontshang pharologano magareng ga botshelo jwa segologolo le jwa segompieno. Mafelo le ona a kgaogantswe ka dikarolo tse: mafelo a a rileng le a ditiragalo. Mafelo a a rileng a tthalositswe e le mafelo a a akanngwang fa mafelo a ditiragalo ona a bua ka mafelo a tlhago. Mafelo a le ona a dirisitswe ke mokwadi fa a rulaganya dikgang tsa gagwe.

6.1.4. Kgaolo ya boraro

Mo kgaolong ya boraro go tthalositswe dikgopolo tsa thulaganyo, e leng, thitokgang, kakanyetso le tthaloso ya dikgato tsa thulaganyo.

Thitokgang ke seo se lemogiwang ke babuisi mo setlhangweng sa mokwadi. Sona se e ka nna molaetsa kgotsa thuto e mokwadi a ratang go e ruta babuisi. Thitokgang ya *Omphile Umphi Modise* e lebagane le matlhotlhapelo.

Kakanyetso le yona e lemositswe fa e le motheo o go theilweng kanedi mo go ona. Go tswelala pele, kakanyetso e, e tthalositswe fa e na le dikarolwana tse di botlhokwa, e leng, matlhakore a mabedi a a dirang gore morero o tlhagelele sentle. Matlhakore a mabedi a, a laola mofuta wa setlhangwa le semelo sa moanelwamogolo. Go ya ka kakanyetso e, go lemogilwe gore *Omphile Umphi Modise* e ka sekasekiwa go senola diteng le dimelo tsa baanelwabagolo.

Go tswelala pele go dirisitswe dielemente tse nne tsa thulaganyo, e leng, baanelwa, ditiragalo, nako le lefelo tseo le tsona di dirisitsweng mo dikarolwaneng tsa thulaganyo go totilwe kgotlhang

ya *Omphile Umphi Modise*. Go gateletswe semelo sa molwantshi. Kgotlhang e e leng teng magareng ga Motlalepule (molwantshiwa) le mosimane yo o tedutsebeng (molwantshi) e amane le go uswa ga sekgwama sa madi e kete ke ka phoso, maano e le gore mosetsana a se nanabele gore molato o tsalege gona foo. Dikgang tse, di senola kgato ya ntlha ya thulaganyo e leng tshenolo.

6.1.5. Kgaolo ya bone

Kgaolo ya bone e lebagantswe le semelo sa moanelwamogolo e leng molwantshiwa. Tlhaloso ya semelo se, e lebagane le tiriso ya thekeniki tseo mokwadi a di dirisitseng mo go *Omphile Umphi Modise*.

Fa go tthalosiwa semelo sa molwantshi, e leng, Motlalepule, go latetswe lenaane le: Puo ya mokwadi, puo le ditiro tsa molwantshiwa le tsa baanelwa ba bangwe.

Mokwadi o tthalositse semelo sa ga Motlalepule ka dipharologantsho di le nne, e leng, bontle, go tlhoka lesego, go sotlega, kutlobotlhoko le bohumanegi.

Bontle bona bo tthalositswe ka dithekeniki di le somennngwe, e leng, tsepamiso, phapologantsho, kgotlhang, lerui, letlhaodi, tebelelo, nyenyefatso, pheteletso, kemedi, leele, ponelopele le tshwantshanyo.

Mo go phapologantsho ya go tlhoka lesego, mokwadi o e tthalositse ka dithekeniki di le thataro, e leng, ponelopele, tshotlo, phapologantsho, mothofatso, tshwantshanyo le tlogelo.

Mo phapologantshong ya go sotlega gona, Monyaise o e tthalositse ka dithekeniki di le somenngwe, e leng, sekai, tshotlo, motifi, mmuaesi (o buela mo pelong), poeletso, leele, kobiso, seane, phapologantsho, tshwantshanyo le pheteletso.

Phaphologantsho ya bohumanegi e tthalositswe ka dithekeniki di le tharo. Tsona ke pheteletso, modirisotaelo le papiso. Mokwadi o senotse phaphologantsho ya kutlwelobotlhoko ka dithekeniki di le tharo, e leng, potso e e sa tlhokeng karabo, leele le tlogelo.

Molwantshiwa, Motlalepule o tthalositse fa e le motho yo o tlhokang makoa. Fa semelo se, sa go tlhoka makoa se tthalosiwa go dirisitswe lenaane le: Puo ya mokwadi, puo le ditiro tsa moanelwa le tsa baanelwa ba bangwe.

Monyaise o tthalositse semelo se ka dipharologantsho di le tharo, e leng, lorato, tshiamo le kutlwelobotlhoko. Pharologantsho ya lorato e tthalositswe ka dithekeniki di le thataro, e leng, tatelano ya ditiragalo, sekai, leele, poelomorago, pharologantsho le tshwantshanyo.

Phapologantsho ya kutlwelobotlhoko e senotswe ka dithekeniki di le nne, e leng, poelomorago, modirisopego, modirisokeletso le seane.

Puo le ditiro tsa ga Motlalepule ga di a tthalosiwa ka botlalo ka gone mokwadi o di tthalositse ka go dirisa phapologantsho e le nngwe fela eo a e tthalositseng ka dithekeniki di le nne, e leng, modirisotaelo, modirisopego, leina le mmuaesi ka tsela ya lokwalo.

Fa go sekasekiwa puo le ditiro tsa baanelwa ba bangwe, mokwadi o di tthalositse ka dipharologantsho di le pedi, e leng, go tlhoka kitso le go tshwara sephiri.

Pharologantsho ya go tlhoka kitso e rulagantswe ka dithekeniki di le tlhano, e leng, lelatlhelwa, lesupi, motifi, seane le lerui. Phapologantsho ya go fitlha sephiri yona e tthalositswe ka dithekeniki di le thataro, e leng, ponelopele, sekai, leele, modirisopego, kgelekiso le tlogelo.

Go lemogilwe gore mokwadi o dirisitse dithekeniki tseo go godisa thitokgang, e leng, ona molaetsa o mmuisi a batlang go o fa mmuisi.

6.1.6. Kgaolo ya botlhano

Mo kgaolong ya botlhano go sekasekilwe semelo sa molwantshi, e leng, mosimane yo o tedutsebeng/tehu tsa katse/RraModise. Monyaise o tthalositse molwantshi e le motho yo o nang le maemo. Tshekatsheko e dirisitse lenaane le le latelang: Puo ya mokwadi, puo ya moanelwa le puo le ditiro tsa baanelwa ba bangwe. Go tswelolela pele mokwadi o dirisitse phapologantsho e le nngwe fela, e leng, boetedipele go tthalosa semelo se.

Phapologantsho ya boeteledipele e bontshitswe ka go dirisa dithekeniki di le pedi, e leng, modirisopego le tebelelo.

Go tthalositswe gape gore molwantshi ke moanelwa yo o nang le makoa. Go dirisitswe pharologantsho ya go se siame e e nang le pharologantsho e nnye, e leng, lonyatso. Yona e tthalositswe ka dithekeniki di le thataro, e leng, tshotlo, motifi, modirisotatelano, tshwantshanyo, phapologantsho le tlogelo.

Fa Monyaise a tthalosa puo le ditiro tsa molwantshi, go dirisitswe phapologantsho ya lonyatso e e lebagantsweng le dithekeniki di le tharo e leng modirisotaelo, tshotlo le lenalana kgakgamalo (aposeterofi).

7. BIBELEOKERAFI/METLOBO

7.1. SETLHANGWA SE SE SEKASEKILWENG

1. Monyaise D.P.S 1960 *Omphile Umphi Modise*

7.2. METSWEDI YA TIORI

1. Abrams, M.H. 1971. *A Glossary of Literary Terms*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Inc.
2. Abrams, M.H 1981. *A Glossary of Literary Terms*. New York: Rinehart and Winston.
3. Abrams, M.H. 1985. *A Glossary of Literary Terms*. New York: Rinehart and Winston.
4. Abrams, M.H 1988. *A Glossary of Literary Terms*. New York: Rinehart and Winston.
5. Abrams, M.H. 1993. *A Glossary of Literary Terms*. New York: Rinehart and Winston.
6. Abrams, M.H. 2005. *A Glossary of Literary Terms: Eight Edition*. Cornell University. Thomson: Wadsworth.
7. Adejere, O. 1992. *Langueges and Stylein Soyinka: Systematic Textlinguistic Study of a Literary Idiolect*. Ibadan: Heinemann Educational Books.
8. Bal, M. 1980. *Narratology. Introduction to the Theory of Narrative*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
9. Baldick, C. 1990. *The Coincise Oxford Dictionary of Literary Terms*. New York: Oxford University Press.
10. Baldick, C. 1993. *The Coincise Oxford Dictionary of Literary Terms*. New York: Oxford University Press.

11. Beckson, K. le Ganz, A. 1960. *A Readers's Guide to Literary Terms*. London: Thames and Hudson.
12. Beckson, K. le Ganz, A. 1961. *A Reader's Guide to Literary Terms*. London: Thames and Hudson
13. Beckson, K. le Ganz, A. 1995. *A Reader's Guide to Literary Terms*. London: Thames and Hudson
14. Brooks, C. le ba bangwe. 1975. *An Approach to Literature (5th Edition)*. Englewood. New Jersey: Prentice Hall Inc.
15. Brooks, C. le ba bangwe. 1979. *An approach to Literature Englewood*. New Jersey: Prentice Hall Inc.
16. Chandler, R. 1899. *Romances of Roguery*. London: Edward Arnold.
17. Chaphole, S.R. le ba bangwe. 1992. *Introduction to Literature: Prose*. Study Manual Pretoria: Yunibesithi ya Vista.
18. Cohen, B.B. 1973. *Writing About Literature: Glenview Illinois*. Scott Foresman and Company.
19. Cole, 1952. *Reading and Responding to Literature*. New York: Harcourt Brace Javannovich Publishers.
20. Cole, S. le Lindemann, J. 1990. *Reading and Responding to Literature*. New York: Harcourt Brace Javannovich Publishers.
21. Cole, D.T. 1992. *An Introduction to Tswana Grammar*. Cape Town: Longman Publishers.
22. Concise Oxford English Dictionary , 1999.
23. Conradie, P.J. 1981. *Hoe om 'n drama te ontleed*. Kaapstad: Craft Press.
24. Cuddon, J.A. 1976. *A Dictionary of Literary Terms and Theory*. Blackwell: Oxford.
25. Cuddon, J.A. 1977. *A Dictionary of Literary Terms*. Great Britain: Andre Deutch Ltd.

26. Cuddon, J.A. 1991. *A Dictionary of Literary Terms and Theory* (3rd Edition) Cambridge. USA: Basil Blackwell Inc.
27. Cuddon, J.A. 1992. *A Dictionary of Literary Terms and Literary Theory* (3rd edition). Brazil: Blackwell Oxford.
28. Cuddon, J.A. 1996. *A Dictionary of Literary Terms and Theory*. Brazil: Blackwell Oxford.
29. Cuddon, J.A. 1998. *A Dictionary of Literary Terms and Literary Theory* (4th Edition). Oxford: Blackwell Publishers.
30. David, M.H. 2000. *Pego Ka Patlisiso ya Leboko la Tautona Ngaka*. Pretoria: Yunibesiti ya Pretoria.
31. Dietrich, R.F. le ba bangwe. 1976. *The Art of Fiction*. Holt: Rinehart and Winston. Inc.
32. Genette, G. 1980. *Narrative. Discourse*. Oxford: Basil Blackwell.
33. Gray, S. 1984. *A Dictionary of Literary Terms*. Hong Kong: York Press.
34. Grobler, G.M.M. 1989. *Time order in Three Novels of O.K. Matsepe. The Story Behind The Text*. Thesese ya Bongaka. Pretoria: UNISA.
35. Groenewald, P.S. 1976. *Die Ontwakkeling Van die Noord-Sotho*. Verhaalkuns. Studies in Bantoetale. Pretoria: Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
36. Groenewald, P.S. 1991. *Sesotho sa Leboa*. BA (Honase) Dingwalo : Sepedi. Pretoria: Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
37. Groenewald, P.S. 1992. *Thutadingwalo ya Sesotho sa Leboa 2*. Pretoria: Via Afrika.
38. Groenewald, P.S. 1993. *Thutadingwalo ya Sesotho sa Leboa 3*. Pretoria: Via Afrika.
39. Groenewald, P.S. 1994. *Thutadingwalo ya Sesotho sa Leboa 4*. Pretoria: Via Afrika.
40. Hawthorn, J. 1985. *A Concise Glossary of Contemporary Literary Theory*. London: Edward Arnold.

41. Heese, M. le Lawton, R. 1988. *The new Owl Critic: An Introduction to Literary Criticism*. Cape Town: Nassou.
42. Holman, G.H. 1936. *A Handbook of Literature*. New York: The Bobbs Merrill Company, Inc.
43. Holman, G.H. 1972. *A Handbook to Literature*. London: Macmillian Publishing CO.
44. Hornby, A.S. 1963. *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English*. London: University Press.
45. Hudson, W.H. 1961. *Introduction to the Study of Literature*. London: Harrop.
46. Kakonis, T.E. le Wilcox, J.C. 1969. *Strategies in Rhetoric: from thought to symbols*. Illinois: Urbana University Press.
47. Kerkhoff, E.L. 1962. *Kleine Deutsche Stilistik*. Bern, Manchen: Francke Verlag.
48. Kgatla 2000. *Kgolo, Tšwetšopele le Katlego ya Kanegelokopana ya Sepedi: (1951- 1999) Thesese ya bongaka*. Pretoria: Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
49. Komati, P.R. 2000. *Manyobonyobo. Padi ya Boitsholo*. Thesese ya M.A. Pretoria: Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
50. Krüger, L. 1988. Sebilwane by N. Matome fela. *A Critical Analysis*. Thesese ya M.A. Potchefstroom: Yunibesithi ya Potchefstroom.
51. Lazarus, A. le Smith, H.W. 1983. *A Glossary of Literature and Composition*. Illinois: Urbana University Press.
52. Lebaka, K.J. 1999. *Megokgo ya Lethabo. Kanegelo ya Lorato ya Sepedi*. Thesese ya M.A. Pretoria: Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
53. Lekganyane, E.M. 1997. *Noto ya Masogana. Padi ya Boitshwaro*. Thesese ya M.A. Pretoria: Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
54. Lombard, D.P. le ba bangwe. 1993. *Northern Sotho Guide 3 for NSA*. London and New York: Methuen.

55. Louwrenz, L.J. 1995. *Consecutive and Habitual Mood*. South African Journal of African Language. Volume 15. Number 4. (Pg 14)
56. Maibelo, J.R. le ba bangwe. 1994. *Direti tse nne*. Randburg: Vivlia Publishers.
57. Magapa, N.I. 1997. *Papetšo ya dikanegelo tšeka tša Lebopa*. Thesese ya M.A. Pretoria: Yunibesithi ya Vista.
58. Makopo, S.A. le ba bangwe. 1989. *Pukuntšuiwoorde boek*: Noord Sotho Afrikaans Pretoria: Van Schaik.
59. Makopo, S.A. le ba bangwe. 1989. *Mahuba a Sesotho sa Leboa Mphato 10*. Johannesburg: Yunibesithi ya Rau.
60. Malimabe, R.M. 1995. *Self-help Study Guide: Setswana Std 10*. New books for Africa. Pretoria: Out fo Africa.
61. Malimabe, R.M. 1997. *Motshwarateu*. Dikwalo 301. (B.A.) Setswana. Pretoria: Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
62. Malimabe, R.M 1998. *Motshwarateu*. Dikwala 302. (BA) Setswana. Pretoria: Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
63. Malope, R.M. 1977. *Tshekatsheko-tsenelelo ya dipadi tsa ntlha tse tlhano tsa ga D.P.S. Monyaise*. Pietersburg: University of the North.
64. Manyaka, N.J. 1992. *Intertextuality in Setswana. The novels of D.P.S Monyaise and M.T. Mmileng*. Mamelodi: Vista.
65. Marggraff, M.M 1994. *The Moral of the Story in Zulu (1930-1955)*. Thesese ya M.A. Pretoria: Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
66. Mathibela, M.A. le ba bangwe 1997. *Language Description Course: TSW 100. Component 2*. Pretoria: Yunibesithi ya Vista.
67. Matseke, S.K. 1968. *Setswana sa ka metlha, Mephato ya IV le V Dikolo tse di phagameng*. Pretoria: Beter Boeke.
68. Meyer, N.A. 1989. *The Secrets of Studying English Literature*. Cape Town: Longman South Africa.

69. Mogapi, K. 1982. *Tshekatsheko ya dikwalo: Padi. Gaborone:* Longman Penguin Southern Africa (Pty) Ltd.
70. Mogapi, K. 1991. *Ngwao ya Setswana. Mabopane:* Sikwane Publishers.
71. Mohlala, M.J. 1994. *Tshekatsheko ya Di sa re šaletše Monaganong. Thesese ya M.A. Pretoria:* Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
72. Mojalefa, D.D. 1994. *Tshekatsheko ya hlwayang tsebe. Thesese ya M.A. Pretoria:* Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
73. Mojalefa, M.J. 1993. *Tshekatsheko ya Sebilwane bjalo ka Thetokanegelo. Thesese ya M.A. Sepedi. Pretoria:* Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
74. Mojalefa, M.J. 1995. *Pego ye e Beakantšwego ya Nyakišišo ya Makxohlo (Lekgotlhoane). Thesese ya bongaka. Pretoria:* Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
75. Mojalefa, M.J. 1995. *Ntlhahle ya pele. (B.A.) Sepedi 102. Pretoria:* Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
76. Mojalefa, M.J. 1996. *Ntlhahle ya boraro. (B.A.) Sepedi 303. Pretoria:* Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
77. Mojalefa, M.J. 1997. *Ntlhahle III. (B.A.) Sepedi 302. Pretoria:* Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
78. Mojalefa, M.J. 1998. *Ntlhahle. (Honase) Sepedi, 700. Pretoria:* Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
79. Mokoena, A.D. 1998. *Sesotho Made Easy: a step-by-step guide to Learning and Mastering Sesotho. Cape Town:* J.L. Van Schaik.
80. Mosehla, M.M. 2000. *Bogosi Kupe. Padi ya Ditshiamelo tsa Basadi. Thesese ya M.A. Pretoria:* Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
81. Moto, S.G. 1990. *Plot in Northern Sotho Drama with Special Reference to C.K. Nchabeleng's works. (M.A.) Sovenga:* Univesity of the North.

82. Moto, S.G. le ba bangwe. 1990. *Popopolelo Dikholetšheng*. (PTY & STD) Juta & Co., Ltd. Kenwyn.
83. Nokaneng, K.P. 1998. *Naming as a technique of characterization in S.P. Mminele's novel: Ngwana wa Mobu* (M.A) Dissertation
Johannesburg: Rand Afrikaans Universitiet.
84. Nokaneng, K.P. le Lowrens, M. 1993. *Segagešo*. Pretoria: Via Afrika.
85. Ntsime, J.M.le Krüger, C.J.H. 1989. *E antswa Letseleng Setlhopha sa 9*. Pretoria: Via Afrika Ltd.
86. O'Neil 1994. *Fiction of Discourse: Reading Narrative Theory*.
Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
87. Paulos, G. 1990. *A Linguistic Analysis of Venda*. Pretoria: Via Africa.
88. Peck, J. le Coyle, M. 1984. *How to study Literature*. London:
MacMillan Education Ltd.
89. Phala, R.S. 1999. *Thellenyane Batla Bolela*. Thesese ya M.A.
Pretoria. Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
- 90.Potter, D.J.L. 1967. *The Context of Literature Written in English Publishers*. Cape Town: Maskew Miller Longman.
91. Preminger le ba bangwe. 1965. *Elements of Literature*. New York:
Princeton University Press.
92. Preminger, A. le ba bangwe. 1986. *The Princeton Handbook of Poetic Terms*. New York: Princeton University Press.
93. Preminger, A le ba bangwe. 1993. *The Princeton Handbook of Poetic Terms*. New York: Princeton University Press.
94. Pretorius, W.J. le Swart, J.H.A.1983. *Teaching African Literature: A Theoretical Methodological Introduction*. Pretoria: University of South Africa.
- 95.Pretorius, R.S. 1990. *Karakterisering in Bogosi Kupe*. Van D.P.S.
Monyaise. Pretoria: UNISA.

96. Prince, G. 1987. *A Dictionary of Narratology*. Lincoln and London: University of Nebraska Press.
97. Prince, G. 1990. *A Dictionary of Narratology*. Lincoln and London: University of Nebraska Press.
98. Raban, J. 1972. *Technique of Modern Fiction* London: Edward Arnold Publishers.
99. Rimmon – Kenan, S. 1983. *Narrative Fiction: Contemporary Poetics*. London and New York: Methuen.
100. Ronen R, 1994. *Possible Words in Literary theory*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
101. Serayi, G.T. 1989. *The Xhosa novel*. Thesese ya Bongaka. Pretoria: UNISA.
102. Serudu, M.S. 1979. *Character delineation in some novels of O.K. Matsepe Unpublished M.A. dissertation* Pretoria: University of S.A.
103. Serudu, M.S. le ba bangwe 1979. *Northern Sotho. Guide 3 (No. 79)*. Pretoria: UNISA.
104. Serudu, M.S. 1981. *New Trend in Northern Sotho Poetry with special reference to H.M.L Letsoaneng's Mokgako*. Pretoria: UNISA.
105. Serudu, M.S. 1989. *Northern Sotho Guide 3*. Pretoria: UNISA.
106. Serudu, M.S. le ba bangwe. 1990. *Northern Sotho Only Study for NSO203*. Pretoria: UNISA.
107. Serudu, M.S. 1990. *Dipheko tša bogologolo*. Pretoria: De Jager Haum.
108. Serudu, S.M. 1992. *Koketšatsebo*. Pretoria: De Jager Haum.
109. Serudu, M.S. le Makena, R.I. 1995. *Sesotho sa Leboa sa Mahlaha*. Pretoria: Kagiso Publishers.
110. Setshedi, J.E. 1980. *Ithuteng Setswana Ditlhopho 8, 9, 10 le tsa Borutabana Bophuthatswana*: Craft Press.

111. Shipley, J.T. 1968. *Dictionary of World Literary Terms: Forms, Techniques, Criticism*. London: George Alien & Unwin.
112. Shipley, J.T. 1970. *Dictionary of World Literary Terms: Forms, Techniques, Criticism*. London: George Allen & Unwin Ltd Ruskin house. Museum Street.
113. Shipley, J.T. 1972. *Dictionary of World Literary Terms*. Boston. The Writer Inc.
114. Shole, J.S.S. 1988. *Mefama ya diterama tsa Setswana*. Pretoria: J.L. Van Schaik.
115. Shole, J.S.S. le ba bangwe. 1988. *Tswana study Guide for TWA100-8*. Dikwalo. Pretoria: UNISA.
116. Shole J.S.1981. “*On style and the Prose Style of D.P.S. Monyaise*” in *Africa Languages, Swanepoel, C.F et al (eds)*. Limi Bulletin of the department of Vol. 9 no.1 and 2. Pretoria: Unisa.
117. Shole, J.S. 1997. *The Relations in Selected, Novels of Monyaise, Mmileng and Marope. A Structural Analysis*. Thesese ya bongaka. Pretoria: UNISA.
118. Sikwane, L.Z. le ba bangwe. 1989. *Study Guide for TWA100-8. Dikwalo: Porouse, Poko, Terama*. Pretoria: UNISA.
119. Smith, W.H.1983. *A Glossary of Literature and Composition*. Illinois: Urbana University Press.
120. Snyman, J.W. le ba bangwe. 1989 *Segarona Mophato wa 10*. Setswana. Cape Town: Educum Publishers.
121. Snyman, J.W.1990. le ba bangwe. *Segarona sa Borutabana. Thutapuo*. JHB: Varia Publishers.
122. Snyman, J.W. le Mothoagae, M.K. 1990. *Segarona sa Borutabana*. Johannesburg: Educum.
123. Snyman, J.W le ba bangwe 1991. *Tswana for beginners*: Pretoria: UNISA.

124. Steeberg , D. le Du Plessis, H. 1992. *Skryateljee: gesprekke oor skryfwerk*. Hatfield: Van Schaik (1st.ed).
125. Stone, W. le Bell, J.G.1968. *Prose style*. New York: McGraw- Hill.
126. Strachan, A. 1988. “*Uthingo Lwenkosazana*” Van D.B.Z. Ntuli ’n *narratologiese ondersoek*. Thesese ya bongaka. Pretoria: Yunibesithi ya Pretoria.
127. Taljaard, P.C. le Bosch, S.E.1988. *A Handbook of Isizulu*. Pretoria: J.L. Van Schaick (Pty) Ltd.
128. Trail, G.Y. 2000. *Rhetorical Terms and Concepts. A Contemporary Glossary*. Fort Worth: Harcourt College Publishers.
129. Turco, L.1960. *The Book of Literary Criticism and Scholarship*. Hanover: New England: University Press.
130. Van Wyk, E.B, Groenewald, P.S., Prinsloo, D.J., Kock, J.H.M. & Taljaard, E. 1992. *Northern Sotho for first years*. Pretoria: J.L. Van Schaik.
131. Wales, K. 1995. *A Dictionary of Stylistics*. London: Longman Group Limited.
132. Wales, K. 1989. *A Dictionary of Stylistics*. London: Longman Group Limited.
133. Winks, R. 1980. *Detective Fiction*. (A collection of Critical essays). New Jersey: Prentice Hall Inc.
134. Wookey, A.T. 1952. (Morulaganyi) *Diñwao lehae le dipoleloka ga dico tsa Secwana. “History of the Bachuana”*. London Missionary Society. Tigerkloof Institution)
135. Worton, M. le Still, J. 1960. *Intertextuality and Practices*. Manchester University Press.
136. Yelland, H.L. le ba bangwe. 1950. *A Handbook of Literary Terms*. London : Angus and Robertson Publishers.

137. Yelland, H.L. le ba bangwe. 1979. *A Handbook of Literary Terms*. London: Angus and Robertson Publishers.
138. Yelland, H.L. le ba bangwe 1983. *A Handbook of Literary Terms*. London: Angus and Robertson Publishers.
139. Ziervogel, D., Louw, J.A le Taljaard, P.C. 1981. *A Handbook of the Zulu Language*. Pretoria: J.L Van Schaik.
140. 1990. *New Encyclopedia Britannica. Vol. 23*. Chicago: World Book – Childcraft International, Inc.
141. 1988. *Terminology and Orthography No.4*. Department of Education and Training.

8. SUMMARY

This study examines D.P.S Monyaise's short story titled *Omphile Umphi Modise* which were scrutinized by Mogapi (1992), Pretorius (1990), Manyaka (1992), Shole (1997) and Malimabe (1998). Their investigation did not only focus on the content of the short story, but also concentrated on the structure and style of the author. When scrutinizing *Omphile Umphi Modise*, the focus mainly falls on content and characterization of the characters. This research is based on an adopted narratological model, which is used by Groenewald (1993) and Mojalefa (1994).. When investigating the content, emphasis is put on the topic as a theme and part of the plot, which is imperative in the analysis of *Omphile Umphi Modise*. Two terms which are to define and describe are used to explain and unravel ideas that were used by the writer to simplify the problems a reader would encounter in this investigation.

When analyzing the content as theory, the following four elements are noticed: characters, events, time and place. Another important aspect on the level of content is the division of the characters into two subgroups, namely quarrelsome and kindhearted.. In *Omphile Umphi Modise*, the kindhearted is Motlalepule, while the quarrelsome is rraModise who blatantly refuses to see Motlalepule's good side. These two characters are described by the following: intention, patronage abilities, success and resistance.

The investigation explains that the theme, which is 'keeping a secret can lead to one's doom', is the one that connects the events and the plot, with the intention of highlighting the message to attract the reader.

Design is one of the most important aspects of the plot. It is herewithin divided into two sections which highlight the characterization of the protagonist and antagonist as well as the revelation of the aspect of tragedy in *Omphile Umphi Modise*.

The characters are divided into two sections, namely main and minor characters. The main characters are the protagonist, the antagonist and the tritagonist. The antagonist in *Omphile Umphi Modise* is rraModise/Mosimane yo o tedu tsebeng/ tedu tsa katse who is portrayed to be evil because he mandated Thandi, a minor character, to put drugs in the tea Motlalepule was about to drink, and sadly ended up drinking it herself. After she was drugged, mosimane yo o tedu tsebeng/tedu tsa katse raped and impregnated her.

The writer uses techniques to explain the personality traits of the characters. He employs a distinguishing technique to highlight personality traits of Motlalepule which are beauty, misfortune, suffering, and poverty. These are explained by the following techniques: focus, differentiation, conflict, use of the possessive, use of the adjective form, point of view, use of diminutive form, exaggeration, use of the pronoun, use of idioms, proverbs and, similes and omission.

Differentiation is employed to highlight leadership as a personality trait of the antagonist, mosimane yo o tedu tsebeng/ tedu tsa katse/rraModise is which is explained by two techniques: indicative mood and point of view.

Keywords: contents

title



plot

theme

relationship

characterization

techniques

distinguishing

antagonist

protagonist

OPSOMMING

In hierdie ondersoek word D.P.S Monyaise se kortverhaal getiteld *Omphile Umphi Modise* ontleed. Dié kortverhaal is krities ontleed deur Mogapi (1992), Pretorius (1990), Manyaka (1992), Shole (1997) en Malimabe (1998). Hulle ondersoek het nie slegs die inhoud van die kortverhaal betrek nie, maar het ook op die struktuur van die kortverhaal en die styl van die skrywer gefokus. Met die ontleding van *Omphile Umphi Modise*, word daar gekonsentreer op twee aspekte, naamlik inhoud en karakterisering van die karakters. Hierdie navorsing word gebaseer op die aangenome narratologiese model wat gebruik word deur Mojalefa (1994) en Groenewald (1993).. Wanneer die inhoud ondersoek word, word daar klem gelê op die onderwerp as 'n tema en as deel van die plot, wat van belang is in die analise van *Omphile Umphi Modise*. Idees wat deur die skrywer gebruik is om die probleme van die leser ten opsigte van die verstaan van die ondersoek te vereenvoudig, word twee terme naamlik en definieer en te interpreteer verduidelik en geanaliseer.

Wanneer die inhoud as teorie ontleed word, word die volgende vier elemente betrek: karakters, gebeure, tyd en plek. 'n Ander belangrike aspek is die vlak van inhoud – die karakters word in twee subgroepe verdeel, naamlik. antagonis en protagonis. In *Omphile Umphi Modise*, is Motlalepule die protagonis, terwyl rraModise die antagonis is wat blatant weier om Motlalepule se goeie kant raak te sien. Hierdie twee karakters word beskryf deur intensie, vermoë, sukses en teenstand.

Die ondersoek verduidelik dat die tema 'om 'n geheim te hou wat tot 'n mens se ondergang kan lei', die een is wat gebeure en plot koppel, met die doel om die boodskap uit te lig om sodoende die leser te interesseer.

Ontwerp is een van die belangrikste aspekte van die plot. Dit word onderverdeel in twee afdelings wat die karakterisering van die protagonis en antagonis, sowel as die tragedieaspek van *Omphile Umphi Modise* beklemtoon.

Die karakters word in twee groepe verdeel, naamlik. hoofkarakters en newekarakters. Die hoofkarakters is die protagonis, die antagonis en die tritagonis. Die antagonis in *Omphile Umphi Modise* is rraModise/Mosimane wa tedu tsebeng/ tedu tsa katse wat uitgebeeld word as boos, omdat hy Thandi, 'n newekarakter, oorreed het om 'n dwelmmiddel in Motlalepule se tee te gooi, en dit toe self gedrink het. Nadat sy bedwelms is, het mosimane yo tedu tsebeng/tedu tsa katse haar verkrag en swanger gemaak.

Die skrywer gebruik verskillende tegnieke om die persoonlikheidskenmerke van die karakters uit te beeld. Hy gebruik 'n spesifieke tegniek om die persoonlikheidskenmerke van Motlalepule uit te lig, naamlik skoonheid, ongeluk, swaarkry en armoede. Hierdie kenmerke word uitgelig deur die volgende tegnieke: fokus, differensiasie, konflik, die possessiewe vorm die adjektiewe vorm, perspektief, die diminutiewe vorm,, oordrywing, die gebruik van die voornaamwoord, die gebruik van idiome, spreekwoorde en vergelykings en elisie.

Differensiasie is gebruik om leierskap as 'n persoonlikheidskenmerk van die antagonis, mosimane yo o tedu tsebeng/ tedu tsa katse/rraModise uit te lig en wat verder verduidelik word deur twee tegnieke naamlik indikatiewe modus en perspektief.



Sleutelwoorde : inhoud
titel
plot
tema
verhouding
karakterisering
tegnieke
onderskeiding
antagonis
protagonis